



# KUBE+ User Guide

---

Version: 2023.1.0 FP1

# Copyright AppViewX, Inc.

## **Copyright © 2023 AppViewX, Inc. All Rights Reserved.**

This document may not be copied, disclosed, transferred, or modified without the prior written consent of AppViewX, Inc. While all content is believed to be correct at the time of publication, it is provided as general-purpose information. The content is subject to change without notice and is provided “as is” and with no expressed or implied warranties whatsoever, including, but not limited to, a warranty for accuracy made by AppViewX. The software described in this document is provided under written license only, contains valuable trade secrets and proprietary information, and is protected by the copyright laws of the United States and other countries. Unauthorized use of software or its documentation can result in civil damages and criminal prosecution.

## **Trademarks**

The trademarks, logos, and service marks displayed in this manual are the property of AppViewX or other third parties. Users are not permitted to use these marks without the prior written consent of AppViewX or such third party which may own the mark.

## **External Reference Links**

This product includes software developed by the CentOS Project ([www.centos.org](http://www.centos.org)).

This product includes software developed by Red Hat, Inc. ([www.redhat.com](http://www.redhat.com)).

This product includes software developed by VMware, Inc. ([www.vmware.com](http://www.vmware.com)).

All other trademarks mentioned in this document are the property of their respective owners.

## **Contact Information**

AppViewX, Inc.

222 Broadway, FL 19

New York, NY 10038

Email: [info@appviewx.com](mailto:info@appviewx.com)

Web: [www.appviewx.com](http://www.appviewx.com)

# Contents

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| Preface.....   | 9         |
| Revision History.....  | 9         |
| About this Guide .....   | 9         |
| Audience.....  | 9         |
| Text Conventions.....  | 9         |
| <b>Chapter 1. KUBE+ Overview.....</b>  | <b>10</b> |
| Simplify and Modernize Certificate Lifecycle Management (CLM) in Kubernetes..... | 10        |
| 3 Steps to Bridge the Gap between Agility and Security in Kubernetes.....        | 10        |
| <b>Chapter 2. KUBE+ Features.....</b>  | <b>11</b> |
| <b>Chapter 3. KUBE+ Deployment Architecture.....</b>                             | <b>12</b> |
| Overview.....  | 12        |
| KUBE+.....   | 12        |
| Cert Orchestrator.....   | 13        |
| Communication Flow.....  | 14        |
| Authentication and Access Control.....   | 14        |
| Authentication.....  | 15        |
| Access Control.....  | 15        |
| <b>Chapter 4. Visibility &amp; Control.....</b>                                  | <b>17</b> |
| Overview.....  | 17        |
| Prerequisites to Onboard a Cluster.....  | 17        |
| Cluster Inventory.....   | 18        |
| Onboarding a Cluster.....  | 19        |
| Managing a Cluster.....  | 22        |
| Unmanaging a Cluster.....  | 23        |
| Modifying Feature Gates of a Cluster.....  | 23        |
| Deleting a Cluster.....  | 24        |
| Deployment Prerequisites for Ephemeral Volume Feature Gate.....                  | 25        |

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| OpenShift Security Permissions.....         | 26        |
| <b>Chapter 5. Visibility.....</b>           | <b>28</b> |
| Visibility - Overview.....                  | 28        |
| Server.....                                 | 28        |
| Ingress Certificates.....                   | 31        |
| Infrastructure Certificates.....            | 31        |
| ServiceMesh.....                            | 31        |
| Others.....                                 | 31        |
| Client.....                                 | 31        |
| Ingress Certificates.....                   | 34        |
| Infrastructure Certificates.....            | 34        |
| ServiceMesh.....                            | 34        |
| Others.....                                 | 34        |
| Trust Store.....                            | 34        |
| Intermediate.....                           | 37        |
| Root.....                                   | 37        |
| <b>Chapter 6. Dashboard - Insights.....</b> | <b>38</b> |
| Dashboard - Overview.....                   | 38        |
| KUBE Summary.....                           | 39        |
| Cluster Certificate Authority.....          | 40        |
| Clusters by Vendors.....                    | 40        |
| Certificates by Namespaces.....             | 41        |
| Top 20 Clusters with Most Certificates..... | 41        |
| Top Clusters with Expired Certificates..... | 42        |
| Namespaces with Expired Certificates.....   | 42        |
| Certificate Expiry by Quarter.....          | 43        |
| Mesh Certificate Authority.....             | 43        |
| Viewing Dashboard Inventory.....            | 44        |
| Aligning the Reports.....                   | 44        |

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| Saving the Dashboard.....                           | 44        |
| Downloading the Dashboard Page.....                 | 45        |
| Scheduling and Emailing the Reports.....            | 45        |
| Refreshing the Dashboard.....                       | 45        |
| <b>Chapter 7. Policy Enforcement.....</b>           | <b>47</b> |
| Policy Enforcement Overview.....                    | 47        |
| Configuring Policy Details.....                     | 49        |
| Configuring Policy for Amazon CA.....               | 51        |
| Configuring Policy for Amazon Private CA.....       | 53        |
| Configuring Policy for DigiCert CA.....             | 57        |
| Configuring Policy for EJBCA CA.....                | 60        |
| Configuring Policy for Entrust CA.....              | 64        |
| Configuring Policy for Entrust MPKI CA.....         | 68        |
| Configuring Policy for GlobalSign Atlas CA.....     | 72        |
| Configuring Policy for GlobalSign CA.....           | 76        |
| Configuring Policy for GlobalSign MSSL CA.....      | 80        |
| Configuring Policy for GoDaddy CA.....              | 85        |
| Configuring Policy for Google CA.....               | 89        |
| Configuring Policy for HashiCorp Vault CA.....      | 93        |
| Configuring Policy for Hydrant ID CA.....           | 97        |
| Configuring Policy for Let's Encrypt CA.....        | 101       |
| Configuring Policy for Microsoft Enterprise CA..... | 105       |
| Configuring Policy for Microsoft Standalone CA..... | 109       |
| Configuring Policy for Nexus CA.....                | 112       |
| Configuring Policy for OpenTrust CA.....            | 117       |
| Configuring Policy for Symantec CA.....             | 121       |
| Configuring Policy for Trustwave CA.....            | 126       |
| Deleting a Policy.....                              | 130       |
| Certificate Authority (CA) Integration.....         | 130       |

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Custom CA.....                        | 131 |
| AppViewX CA.....                      | 134 |
| AppViewX PKIaaS CA.....               | 138 |
| Amazon and Amazon Private CA.....     | 140 |
| Segito CA.....                        | 158 |
| DigiCert CA.....                      | 161 |
| DigiCert MPKI.....                    | 163 |
| EJBCA CA.....                         | 167 |
| Entrust.....                          | 170 |
| Entrust MPKI.....                     | 173 |
| GlobalSign MSSL CA.....               | 176 |
| GlobalSign Atlas CA.....              | 179 |
| GoDaddy CA.....                       | 182 |
| Google CA.....                        | 186 |
| Certificate Authority Service CA..... | 188 |
| HashiCorp Vault CA.....               | 190 |
| InCommon CA.....                      | 195 |
| Let's Encrypt CA.....                 | 198 |
| Microsoft Enterprise CA.....          | 200 |
| Nexus.....                            | 206 |
| OpenTrust CA.....                     | 209 |
| Symantec CA.....                      | 211 |
| Trustwave CA.....                     | 214 |
| Groups.....                           | 216 |
| Creating a Group.....                 | 217 |
| Modifying a Group.....                | 219 |
| Deleting a Group.....                 | 219 |
| Cluster Policy.....                   | 219 |
| Creating a CA Policy.....             | 220 |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| Deleting a Cluster Policy.....  | 222        |
| <b>Chapter 8. Automate Certificate Lifecycle Management.....</b>                      | <b>223</b> |
| Steps for Automating Certificate Lifecycle Management.....                            | 223        |
| Issuer CA.....  | 223        |
| Creating a CA Settings.....   | 224        |
| Deleting a Issuer CA.....   | 226        |
| Secure Apps Inventory.....  | 226        |
| Enrolling a Certificate.....  | 227        |
| Download a Certificate.....   | 231        |
| Deleting a Certificate.....   | 233        |
| <b>Chapter 9. Secure Service Mesh with mTLS authentication.....</b>                   | <b>235</b> |
| Why Zero Trust is Critical?.....  | 235        |
| AppViewX Integration with Istio Service Mesh.....                                     | 235        |
| mTLS with Istio Service Mesh.....   | 235        |
| Enabling AppViewX Signer.....   | 236        |
| 2 Steps to Enable the Zero Trust Security for Containers Using mTLS Certificates..... | 237        |
| Steps to Enable a Signer for mTLS Certificate Issuance.....                           | 237        |
| Onboard Cluster.....  | 237        |
| Policy Enforcement for Secure ServiceMesh.....  | 238        |
| <b>Chapter 10. Mesh Inventory.....</b>  | <b>240</b> |
| Mesh Inventory Overview.....  | 240        |
| Onboarding a Mesh.....  | 241        |
| Deleting a Mesh.....  | 243        |
| Significance of Issuer CA Mode.....   | 244        |
| <b>Chapter 11. Enable External Signing.....</b>                                       | <b>246</b> |
| Overview.....   | 246        |
| Creating a Signer Profile.....  | 246        |
| <b>Chapter 12. Integrating Istio with Custom CA.....</b>                              | <b>248</b> |
| About Integrating Istio with Custom CA.....   | 248        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>Chapter 13. Logs.....</b>                            | <b>249</b> |
| Logs.....   | 249        |
| Viewing Details of a Log.....                           | 250        |
| Filtering the Logs.....                                 | 250        |
| <b>Chapter 14. System Administration.....</b>           | <b>251</b> |
| Crypto Minions.....                                     | 251        |
| Configuring Cluster Settings.....                       | 252        |
| Configuring Email Settings.....                         | 253        |
| Setting up Configurations for Expired Certificates..... | 253        |
| Auto Enrollment.....                                    | 254        |
| EST.....  | 255        |
| <b>Chapter 15. Uninstall and Cleanup.....</b>           | <b>278</b> |
| Steps to Uninstall/Cleanup KUBE+ Deployment.....        | 278        |
| <b>Chapter 16. FAQ and Troubleshooting.....</b>         | <b>280</b> |
| Command Line Cheat Sheet.....                           | 280        |
| FAQ.....  | 281        |

# Preface

## Revision History

| Revision | Description                                       | Date           |
|----------|---|----------------|
| 1.1      | Updated documents for Release 2023.1.0 FP1.       | November 2023  |
| 1.0      | Initial release of document for Release 2023.1.0. | September 2023 |

## About this Guide

Welcome to the KUBE+ guide, introducing AppViewX KUBE+, a cutting-edge K8s Crypto Mesh designed for cloud and Kubernetes environments. This platform ensures top-notch security for containerized workloads by seamlessly handling TLS certificate issuance and management through automation. With KUBE+, administrators gain full control over the lifecycle of X.509 certificates within their Kubernetes cluster, empowering them with comprehensive certificate management capabilities.

## Audience

The document is intended for internal users and customers of AppViewX.

## Text Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

| Convention             | Description  |
|------------------------|--|
| <b>boldface</b>        | Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary. |
| <i>italic</i>          | Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.                  |
| <code>codeblock</code> | Indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.        |

# Chapter 1: KUBE+ Overview

## Simplify and Modernize Certificate Lifecycle Management (CLM) in Kubernetes

AppViewX KUBE+ is a comprehensive certificate lifecycle management solution for Kubernetes environments. It provides a central solution to discover, manage, automate, and govern certificates (or machine identities) across cloud-native containerized workloads and Kubernetes infrastructure. By bringing together visibility, automation, and policy-driven control, KUBE+ bakes security into the core of DevOps pipelines and Kubernetes management.

### 3 Steps to Bridge the Gap between Agility and Security in Kubernetes

1. Get Visibility into all SSL/TLS certificates across your Kubernetes environments.



2. Enforce PKI policies to ensure the use of compliant CAs and strong crypto-standards.



3. Automate end-to-end Certificate Lifecycle Management.



## Chapter 2: KUBE+ Features

AppViewX KUBE+ offers comprehensive lifecycle management of x.509 digital certificates across K8s clusters and container workloads. It comes equipped with a variety of features, including the following:

- **Visibility & Control:** This platform provides a single solution for discovering, ensuring compliance, and maintaining control over TLS certificates across K8s and multi-cloud infrastructures.
- **Full TLS coverage on K8s:** Pod-Pod Communication (mTLS), Ingress Traffic, Ephemeral Pods, K8s Infra.
- **Enterprise PKI:** Automated certificate lifecycle management integrated with Public and Private CA (Issue, renew, and revoke).
- **High Availability & Resiliency:** Always available PKI with Offline CA issuance.
- **Business Continuity:** Simplify and streamline the Enterprise PKI certificate issuance process via Workflow Orchestration.
- **Ecosystem:** One single integrated platform (CA, Vault, TLS keystores, ITSM, K8s platform, & DevOps Tools).
- **Governance:** Audit & Control of certificates across Hybrid Cloud Infra.

# Chapter 3: KUBE+ Deployment Architecture

- [Overview](#)
- [KUBE+](#)
- [Cert Orchestrator](#)
- [Communication Flow](#)
- [Authentication and Access Control](#)

## Overview

AppViewX KUBE+ consists of a control plane and a set of in-cluster components, designed on a microservice architecture and deployed as a container workload. The control plane is equipped with the ability to gain valuable insights into SSL/TLS certificates throughout K8s clusters and enforce PKI policies for these clusters. Meanwhile, the in-cluster components handle the automated lifecycle management of x.509 digital certificates for K8s clusters and container workloads.

- **KUBE+**: As a control plane feature, KUBE+ serves as a centralized hub, empowering users to effortlessly discover, manage, and automate certificate issuance via a robust policy-driven approach.
- **Cert-Orchestrator**: The primary component of KUBE+ which is deployed within a Kubernetes cluster and is responsible for managing the lifecycle of certificates.

## KUBE+

AppViewX KUBE+ is a powerful control plane that offers centralized visibility and management for certificates across Kubernetes and container workloads through its integrated components. With KUBE+, you can maintain up-to-date certificate inventories, track certificate chain of trust, locations, expiration dates, and crypto standards.

The platform enables you to establish and enforce enterprise-wide PKI policies and role-based access controls, providing enhanced security. KUBE+ also facilitates easy audits and compliance validation with comprehensive reporting and logging functionalities.

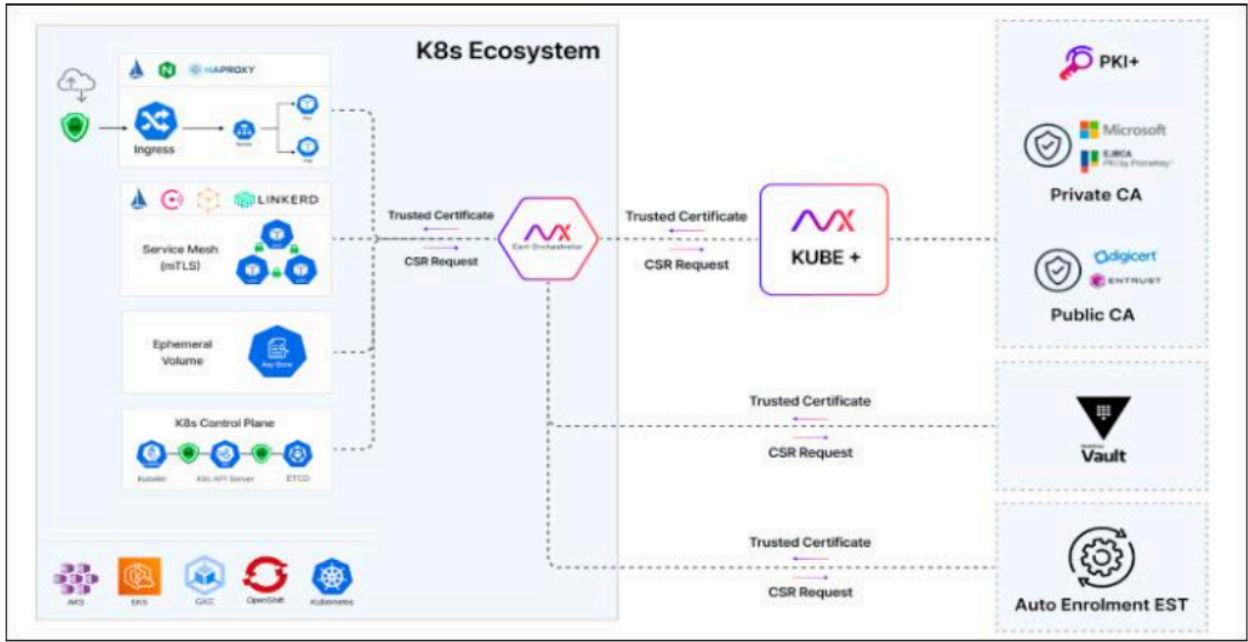
Moreover, the seamless integration with both public trust and private trust Certificate Authorities (CAs) simplifies the management of the entire certificate lifecycle, ensuring a smooth and efficient process.

# Cert Orchestrator

Cert-Orchestrator is a Kubernetes cryptomesh that utilizes a microservice architecture and is deployed as a container workload. Its purpose is to facilitate the implementation of KUBE+ across workloads and hosted clusters.

Users have the option to deploy and integrate the cert orchestrator with AppViewX KUBE+. This enables the full range of Crypto Mesh features, or specific features can be selectively implemented depending on the use case. The cert-orchestrator comprises several sub-components that enable the KUBE+ solution:

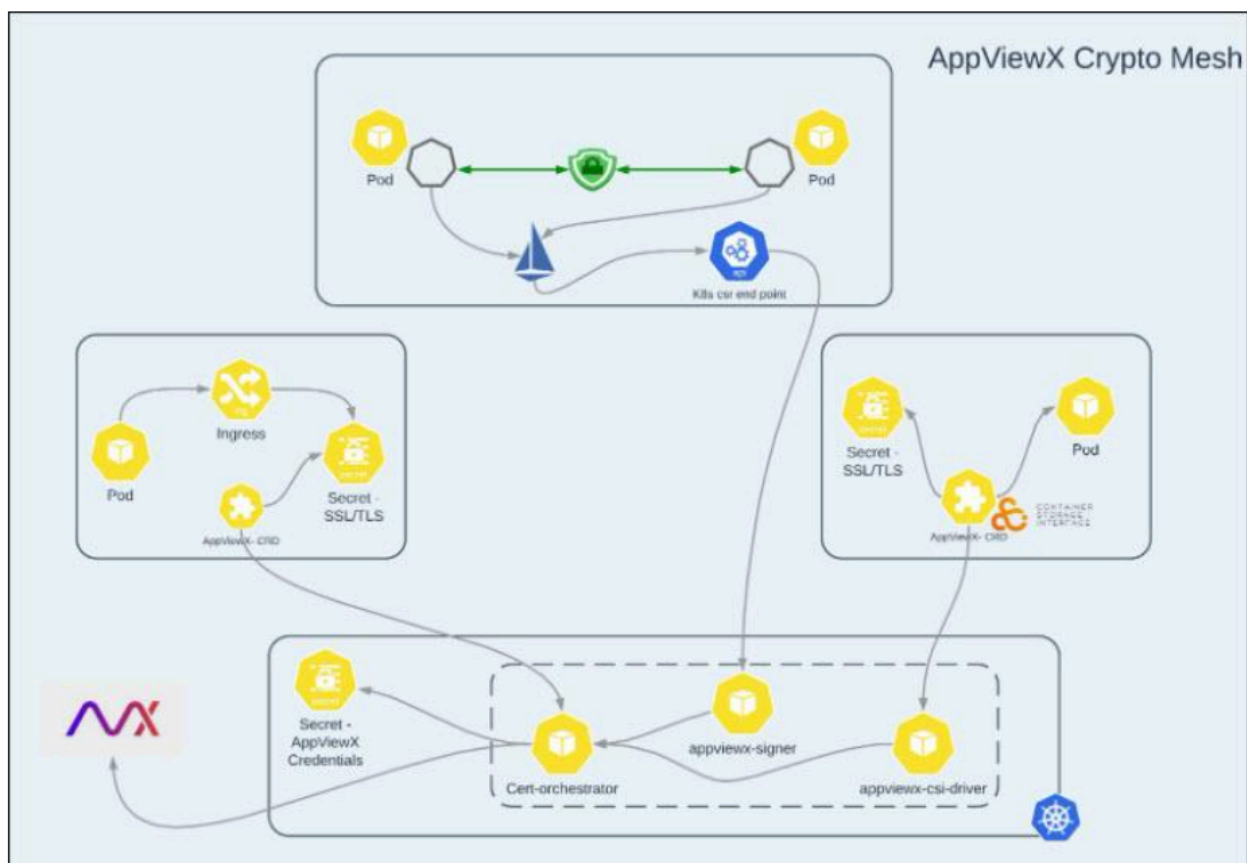
- **Cert-orchestrator controller:** The primary component of KUBE+ is deployed to enable end-to-end certificate lifecycle management, including discovery, enrollment, and renewal.
- **AppViewX-Signer:** The KUBE+ component is deployed together with Cert-orchestrator to manage certificates within Istio Service Mesh.
- **AppViewX-CSI:** The KUBE+ component is deployed along with Cert-orchestrator to manage certificates within ephemeral volumes of pods.
- **AppViewX-Infra-orchestrator:** The KUBE+ component, deployed as a daemon set along with Cert-orchestrator, enables certificate lifecycle management for the Kubernetes infrastructure or control plane, including certificate discovery and enrollment from external public or private CAs.



## Communication Flow

Cert-orchestrator and AppViewX KUBE+ primarily communicate through REST API-based communication to facilitate end-to-end certificate lifecycle management operations.

The communication between the subcomponents of the cert-orchestrator and AppViewX KUBE+ for their respective business logic is enabled and routed through the cert-orchestrator controller. The cert-orchestrator serves as the control plane for the end-to-end certificate lifecycle management operations, which means that any outgoing communication from the Kubernetes cluster to AppViewX KUBE+ is only routed through the primary controller.



## Authentication and Access Control

The communication between the K8s cluster and AppViewX KUBE+ takes place through a REST API, and it is authenticated. AppViewX provides several authentication modes to access its API.

## Authentication

- **Basic Authentication:** AppViewX offers multiple modes of authentication for accessing its API. Users can create a dedicated user for authentication, either an external user (LDAP, RADIUS and TACACS) or an internal user created in AppViewX. For more information on Basic Authentication, refer to [Platform User guide](#).
- **OAuth 2.0 (Service Account):** Users have the option to create a service account that is enabled through AppViewX OAuth 2.0. They can then obtain the client ID and client secret from the service account, which can be used for authentication purposes. For more information on OAuth 2.0, refer to [Platform User guide](#).

## Access Control

Each role assigns a specific set of permissions relating to the modules that can be accessed and the tasks that can be performed in each AppViewX module. The roles can be assigned only to a user group. The user groups that are assigned with a role will automatically inherit all the associated permissions. User groups can be assigned with more than a role.

The Roles management of Inventory comprises some of the Out of the Box (OOB) roles available for KUBE+ features via cert-orchestrator. The OOB roles can be cloned, enabled, and disabled. It can not be updated or deleted. Administrators can also create custom roles. Custom roles can be updated, deleted, enabled, and disabled. Users can either use OOB roles (if they match their needs) or custom roles to map to user groups. KUBE+ is enabled with a list of Out Of the Box roles to ease the process of defining access and role permissions for different personas accessing KUBE+.

**KUBE-Application-User:** For DevOps/Application users/CloudOps teams to perform Certificate Lifecycle Management for their applications (or) business units.

**KUBE-PKI-Administrator:** For Infosec and PKI teams to define and enforce PKI policies for their Kubernetes environments.

**KUBE-cert-orchestrator:** Role to be mapped to the service account or user used for deployment of Cert-Orchestrator for performing CLM operations on individual Kubernetes clusters.

As previously explained, when deploying Cert-Orchestrator within the Kubernetes cluster for access control, it's necessary to follow these steps:

1. Create a user or service account and associate it with the User Group.
2. Assign the KUBE-cert-orchestrator role to the User Group.
3. Additionally, ensure that the super access resource is linked to the User Group.
4. Ensure MFA (Multi Factor Authentication) is disabled for this user since it is used for API access.

For detailed instructions to perform any actions on role, see [Platform User Guide](#).

# Chapter 4: Visibility & Control

- [Overview](#)
- [Prerequisites to Onboard a Cluster](#)
- [Cluster Inventory](#)
- [Deployment Prerequisites for Ephemeral Volume Feature Gate](#)

## Overview

To eliminate outages and ensure security, Infosec and PKI teams need to prevent security blindspots by getting complete visibility into all certificates across Kubernetes environments.

To achieve visibility into all certificates using KUBE+, the DevOps/CloudOps teams must adhere to the following process.

1. **Onboard Cluster** - Deploy AppViewX KUBE+ component in the desired cluster.
2. **Manage Cluster** - Deploy cert-orchestrator with the feature gate to discover certificates and manage the cluster in the inventory.
3. **Visibility & Insights** - The certificates discovered from these managed clusters can be visualized in the inventory and dashboards for assessing the security risks.

## Prerequisites to Onboard a Cluster

The cert-orchestrator is deployed as a container workload on the same Kubernetes infrastructure where the workloads requiring certificates are running.

To begin the deployment process, the following prerequisites must be met and verified:

- Cluster Running Kubernetes version 1.22 and above; OpenShift version 4.10, 4.11 or 4.12.
- Docker version 20.x installed and running as the container runtime.
- Containerd running if the cluster does not support docker runtime.
- Access to AppViewX KUBE+ instance deployed on-prem or an AppViewX SaaS instance subscribed.
- Helm and kubectl packages installed in the Kubernetes cluster.

- In the case of a bastion host, the bastion host should be connected to the cluster.
- Access to the helm and docker image repositories hosted at AppViewX.





**Note:** Contact AppViewX support to obtain the authentication credentials for the Docker and Helm repository.

## Cluster Inventory

To deploy the cert-orchestrator in the Kubernetes cluster the deployment configuration for the cluster should be obtained from AppViewX by onboarding the cluster in the Cluster Inventory and the cluster to be set in Managed status.

Cluster Inventory displays the list of clusters within a cert-orchestrator. On the Cluster Inventory page, you can:

- refresh the list, click the  (**refresh**) icon.
- go to the pages, click the  (**navigation**) icon.

The cluster inventory list includes the following information:

### Column and Description Table

| Column Name         | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>Cluster Name</b> | Name of the Kubernetes cluster and metadata about the cluster retrieved on clicking the name of the cluster.   |
| <b>Vendor</b>       | The Kubernetes Cluster Provider.   |
| <b>No. of Nodes</b> | Count of nodes in the cluster.   |
| <b>State</b>        | State of the Cluster for CLM operations. Possible Options: Managed (CLM operations can be performed) and Unmanaged (CLM operations cannot be performed). |
| <b>Status</b>       | Health of the cert-orchestrator in the cluster.  |

**Column and Description Table (continued)**

| Column Name         | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>Created By</b>   | The user who generated the deployment configuration.                       |
| <b>Last Updated</b> | Timestamp of the most recent health check update.                          |
| <b>Actions</b>      | Actions icon allows updating the deployment configuration for the Cluster. |

- [Onboarding a Cluster](#)
- [Managing a Cluster](#)
- [Unmanaging a Cluster](#)
- [Modifying Feature Gates of a Cluster](#)
- [Deleting a Cluster](#)

## Onboarding a Cluster

Connect Cluster enables you to obtain the deployment configuration of the cluster for deploying and managing the cert-orchestrator from AppViewX KUBE+.


To obtain cert-orchestrator deployment configuration for the respective Kubernetes cluster:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Inventory > Cluster Inventory**.
2. Click **Connect Cluster** on the menu bar.
3. On the **Generate Helm Command** page, key in the values for the form fields to obtain the deployment/installation command. Details on the mapping of each field are provided in the table below:


**Generating Helm Command - Fields and Description Table**

| Field                                   | Description |
|---|-------------|
| <b>Cluster and Connectivity Details</b> |             |



| Field                      | Description  |
|----------------------------|--|
| <b>Enter Cluster Name*</b> | Enter a unique cluster name in the format of FQDN. Example: my-cluster.net.  |
| <b>Vendor*</b>             | <p>Select the K8s vendor where the cert-orchestrator is deployed from the dropdown list. The options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EKS</li> <li>• AKS</li> <li>• GKE</li> <li>• OpenShift</li> <li>• Self-Managed</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Connect To*</b>         | <p>Select one of the following options to establish a connection between the cert-orchestrator and AppViewX across different AppViewX deployment scenarios:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>AppViewX URL</b> - For on-prem deployment, select this option.</li> <li>• <b>Cloud Connector URL</b> - For cloud SaaS deployment, select this option.</li> </ul> |
| <b>URL*</b>                | Enter the URL based on the Connect To type (onprem/cloud connector).   |
| <b>Credential Type*</b>    | <p>Select one of the following credential types for integrating the cert-orchestrator with AppViewX:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Basic Authentication</b></li> <li>• <b>OAuth2.0</b></li> </ul>  |
| <b>Username*</b>           | This option is applicable for the Basic Authentication of the Credential Type and will auto populate the list of users from the user inventory. Select the required user to be used for authentication.  |

| Field                                | Description  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
|                                      | <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> In this mode, only users created within the AppViewX database or on boarded via AAA (LDAP, RADIUS, TACACS) are supported. SSO credentials cannot be used for API authentication. It is recommended to use OAuth 2.0 for authentication instead.                 </div> |
| <b>Crypto Mesh Details</b>           |  |
| <b>Namespace*</b>                    | Enter the Namespace where the cert-orchestrator is to be deployed. It is recommended to install in the crypto-mesh namespace.  |
| <b>Features*</b>                     | Select the list of feature gates to be enabled/disabled in the cert-orchestrator deployment configuration for the cluster.   |
| <b>Certification Group*</b>          | Select the certificate group to onboard certificates: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto Create Group</b> - This option enables Auto creation of Certificate Groups in AppViewX with the Group Name as the Namespace Name.</li> <li>• <b>Use Existing</b> - This option allows you to choose the existing certificate group. If you choose this option, select a group from the <b>Select Group</b> dropdown menu. .</li> </ul>      |
| <b>Enable Private Key Discovery*</b> | Set the value to “True”, if you want to discover the private keys from the Kubernetes secrets.   |

4. Click **Generate Installation Command** to get the Helm command in the Commands field.

 **Note:**



- To see the commands in the full screen view, click the  (**Expand**) icon.
- To copy the command, click  (**Copy**) icon.

##### 5. Click **Finish**.

Execute the copied installation commands sequentially on your Kubernetes cluster where the cert-orchestrator is to be deployed.



**Note:** Upon clicking **Finish**, the deployment generated for the cluster will not appear in the cluster inventory until the cert-orchestrator is successfully deployed within the cluster.

To verify if the cert-orchestrator is deployed and functioning as expected, execute the following command:

```
kubectl get pods --all -n crypto-mesh
```



**Note:** The initial status of the cert-orchestrator pod will be in 1/2 running state and the state will be changed to 2/2 upon approval/moving the cluster to managed state in the Cluster inventory.

- Expected status is for the pods to be in running status with 1/2 state.
- In case of any issues or logs to be collected or verified, execute **kubectl logs -f <cert-orchestrator-podname> -n crypto-mesh**.
- Ensure to review the deployment prerequisites for ephemeral volume if the Ephemeral Volume use case is selected.

## Managing a Cluster

CLM operations on the Kubernetes cluster where the cert-orchestrator is deployed will be enabled only when the cluster is in **Managed State**.

Upon successful installation of cert-orchestrator in the desired cluster, the cluster information will be automatically populated in the Cluster Inventory in a **Pending Approval** status.

To change the cluster status to Managed:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Inventory > Cluster Inventory**.
2. Select a preferred cluster(s), and then click **Manage**.



**Note:** To enable the automatic transition of clusters into a managed state, administrators can set the 'Cluster Auto Approval Policy' to **True** by navigating to **menu > KUBE+ > System Administration > Cluster Settings**.

It takes a while to update the status of the cluster to Managed.

## Unmanaging a Cluster

You can restrict additional CLM operations on a designated cluster that is already in a Managed State within the Cluster Inventory by unmanaging the cluster.

To unmanage a cluster:


1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Inventory > Cluster Inventory**.
2. Select a managed cluster.
3. Click **Unmanage** on the menu bar.

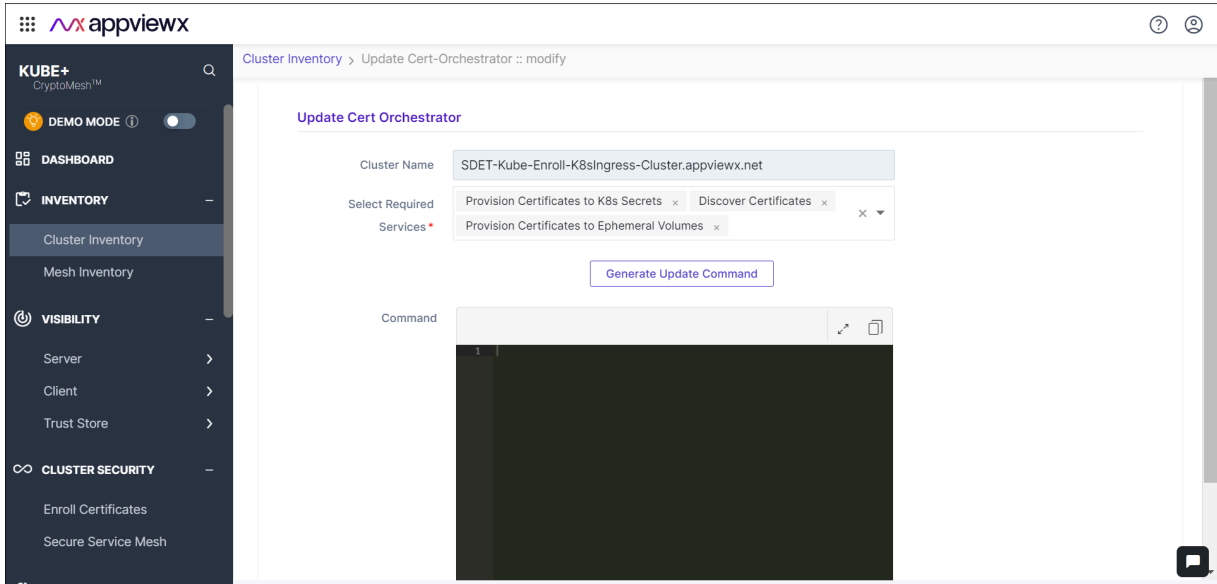
It takes a while to update the status of the cluster to Unmanaged.

## Modifying Feature Gates of a Cluster

The feature gates configured while generating the deployment configuration can be modified post successful deployment of cert-orchestrator in the desired cluster.

To modify feature gates for a cluster, by simply clicking on the edit icon parallel to the cluster name.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Inventory > Cluster Inventory**.
2. Click the  icon on a cluster in the **Actions** column.
3. On the **Update Cert Orchestrator** page, modify the feature gates.



4. Click **Generate Update Command** to get the updated deployment configuration.
5. Copy and execute the install command in the desired cluster.



**Note:** To go to the previous page, click on **Cluster Inventory** in the breadcrumb trail.

## Deleting a Cluster

You can delete clusters from the inventory, if the user chooses to restrict and remove CLM operations on the designated cluster.

To delete a cluster:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Inventory > Cluster Inventory**.
2. Select the designated cluster, regardless of whether it is in a Managed or Unmanaged state.
3. Click **Delete** on the menu bar.



**Note:**



- A cluster can be removed from the inventory after deleting its associated configurations, including Cluster Policy, Issuer CA, and Certificates enrolled for the cluster, have been removed.
- Deleting clusters from the inventory will not remove the in-cluster KUBE+ components. Users are required to follow the [Uninstall and Clean Up](#) steps within the cluster to complete the removal process.

## Deployment Prerequisites for Ephemeral Volume Feature Gate

Enabling the feature gate "Provision Certificates to Ephemeral Volumes" for certificate provisioning into pod volumes will require the activation of a CSI driver feature within the cluster where the cert-orchestrator is deployed.

To enable the CSI provider:

1. Add the CSI provider helm repository to the Kubernetes cluster by using the command: `helm repo add secrets-store-csi-driver https://kubernetes-sigs.github.io/secrets-store-csi-driver/charts`.
2. Install the CSI provider drive in the Kubernetes cluster by using the command `helm install csi secrets-store-csi-driver/secrets-store-csi-driver --namespace crypto-mesh --set syncSecret.enabled=true --set enableSecretRotation=true --set rotationPollInterval=5m`.



### Note:

- The value of `RotationPollInterval` can be configured to set the time interval at which the CSI driver makes a call to `appviewx-csi-provider` for synchronizing the certificate content from secret to pod volume.
- If the CSI provider driver already existed prior to the installation of the crypto mesh, you can skip this step.
- For CSI feature, in case of any issues or logs to be collected or verified execute `kubectl logs -f <appviewx-csi-provider-podname> -n crypto-mesh`.

- [OpenShift Security Permissions](#)

## OpenShift Security Permissions

For deploying the AppViewX CSI feature in OpenShift environments, the following elevated privileges are required. To execute the prerequisites, Contact OpenShift Administrator.

1. After deploying the appviewx-csi-provider in an OpenShift cluster, patch the DaemonSet for the AppViewX CSI Provider to run with a privileged security context. `kubectl patch daemonset appviewx-csi-provider --type='json' --patch='[{"op": "add", "path": "/spec/template/spec/containers/0/securityContext", "value": {"privileged": true}}]`.
2. Add the security account for the Secret Store CSI Driver and AppViewX CSI Provider to the privileged security context constraint. To obtain the name of the service account associated with the AppViewX CSI provider, run the command `oc get sa -n crypto-mesh`, and copy the relevant name to be used in the command below: `oc adm policy add-scc-to-user privileged system:serviceaccount:crypto-mesh:secrets-store-csi-driver` `oc adm policy add-scc-to-user privileged system:serviceaccount:crypto-mesh:<replace with service account name>`.
3. Give additional access to the application for retrieving secrets with the AppViewX CSI Provider. Create a **SecurityContextConstraint** to **allowHostDirVolumePlugin** and **allowHostPorts** for the service account of the application.

```
cat > application-scc.yaml << EOF
apiVersion: security.openshift.io/v1
kind: SecurityContextConstraints
metadata:
  name: appviewx-csi-provider
allowPrivilegedContainer: false
allowHostDirVolumePlugin: true
allowHostNetwork: true
allowHostPorts: true
allowHostIPC: false
allowHostPID: false
readOnlyRootFilesystem: false
defaultAddCapabilities:
- SYS_ADMIN
runAsUser:
  type: RunAsAny
seLinuxContext:
  type: RunAsAny
fsGroup:
```

```
type: RunAsAny
users:
- system:serviceaccount:crypto-mesh:<replace with service account name>
EOF
Kubectl apply -f application-scc.yaml
```

# Chapter 5: Visibility

- [Visibility - Overview](#)
- [Server](#)
- [Client](#)
- [Trust Store](#)

## Visibility - Overview

After successfully installing cert-orchestrator on the desired cluster and enabling the feature gate for certificate discovery, it will automatically detect certificates within the Kubernetes environment and create an inventory, allowing you to proactively manage all certificates from a unified dashboard.

Certificates discovered from Kubernetes are further classified into:

1. **Ingress** - Certificates which are used by Ingress controllers.
2. **Infrastructure certificates** - Certificate discovered from Kubernetes control plane components.
3. **Service Mesh** - Certificates which are enrolled from AppViewX for Service Mesh for mTLS authentications.
4. **Others** - Certificates which are not of any of the above 3 classifications will be classified as Others.


## Server

Server certificate inventory is where all the server certificates with the EKU (Extended/enhanced Key Usage) Server authentication will be present.

In this release, renewals and regenerations of the server certificates are only supported through the Cert-Orchestrator, which is part of the in-cluster component of KUBE+.

The following table describes the options available on the Server Certificate inventory page:



### Options available on the Server Certificate page

| Options   | Description  |
|---|--|
|  | Allows to switch between the view by clicking the toggle button. |

**Options available on the Server Certificate page (continued)**

| Options                | Description   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>Groups</b>          | Expanding this dropdown displays the certificate groups and the number of certificates in each group. Selecting a group will display the filtered list of certificates.   |
| <b>Filter Summary</b>  | Displays the status of certificates according to expiry, compliance, validity, and so on.   |
| <b>Advanced Search</b> | <p>Allows you to perform a quick search for specific data. Clicking on the search bar dropdown opens the <b>Advanced Search</b> window.</p> <p>To find the preferred server certificate, perform any of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Choose the CAs from the Certificate Authority dropdown menu.</li> <li>2. Enter the desired search terms in the Common Name, Serial Number, or Issuer Common Name field.</li> <li>3. Select a certificate attribute from the dropdown list and if required add more certificate attributes to the search criteria by clicking the Add Certificate Attribute.</li> <li>4. Click Search.</li> </ol> <p>The matching server certificates are displayed on the Server Certificate page.</p> |
| <b>Actions</b>         | <p>Displays the list of actions you can perform on the certificates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Export Certificates</li> <li>• Download Certificates</li> <li>• Delete</li> <li>• Change Status</li> </ul>  |

**Options available on the Server Certificate page (continued)**

| Options   | Description   |
|---|---|
|   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assign Group</li> <li>• Unassign Group</li> <li>• Add/Modify Comments</li> <li>• Certificate Attributes</li> <li>• Renew Certificate</li> <li>• Revoke Certificate</li> <li>• CA Switch</li> <li>• Revocation Check</li> </ul> |
| <b>Columns</b>  | Allows you to select the columns to be displayed on the Server Certificate inventory page.  |
| <b>Number of Rows per Page</b>  | Hover the mouse over the number of row displayed on the page, the Show popup opens and choose the no. of rows to be displayed on the page.  |
|  | Allows to switch between the certificate inventory pages.   |
|  | Allows to refresh the certificate inventory data.   |

The Server Certificate inventory list includes the following information:

**Column and Description Table**

| Column Name             | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Common Name</b>      | The common name of the certificate.  |
| <b>Discovery Source</b> | The source from which a certificate management system discovers and retrieves information about certificates |
| <b>Serial Number</b>    | A unique identifier assigned to the certificate by the CA during the issuance process.                       |
| <b>Group</b>            | The certificate group name.  |

**Column and Description Table (continued)**

| Column Name                  | Description  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Issuer Common Name</b>    | Issuer name of the certificate.  |
| <b>Valid To (GMT)</b>        | The expiration date and time of a certificate, expressed in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). |
| <b>Status</b>                | The status of the certificate.   |
| <b>Certificate Authority</b> | Name of the Certificate Authority (CA).  |
| <b>Kube Attributes</b>       | Attributes configured in CA.   |

## Ingress Certificates

Certificates discovered from Kubernetes secrets and secrets associated with Kubernetes ingresses are classified as Ingress certificates.

## Infrastructure Certificates

Certificates discovered from Kubernetes control plane components via feature gate “**Discover K8’s Infra Certificates**” are classified as Infrastructure certificates.

## ServiceMesh

KUBE+ provides the feature gate to secure pod-pod communication in a Kubernetes service mesh infrastructure with mTLS certificates signed by Enterprise PKI. If the feature gate “**Enable mTLS certificates for Service Mesh**” is enabled the mTLS certificates signed by AppViewX will be classified as Service Mesh certificates.

## Others

Certificates discovered from Kubernetes secrets and not associated with any ingress (or) which does not classify into any of the above categories will be classified as Other certificates.


## Client

Client certificate inventory is where all the client certificates with the EKU (Extended/enhanced Key Usage) Client authentication will be present.



In this release, renewals and regenerations of the client certificates are only supported through the Cert-Orchestrator, which is part of the in-cluster component of KUBE+.

The following table describes the options available on the server certificate inventory page:

**Options available on the Client Certificate page**

| Options   | Description   |
|---|---|
|  | <p>Allows to switch between the view by clicking the toggle button.</p>   |
| <p><b>Groups</b></p>  | <p>Expanding this dropdown displays the certificate groups and the number of certificates in each group. Selecting a group will display the filtered list of certificates.</p>  |
| <p><b>Filter Summary</b></p>  | <p>Displays the status of certificates according to expiry, compliance, validity, and so on.</p>  |
| <p><b>Advanced Search</b></p>   | <p>Allows you to perform a quick search for specific data. Clicking on the search bar dropdown opens the <b>Advanced Search</b> window.</p> <p>To find the preferred server certificate, perform any of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Choose the CAs from the Certificate Authority dropdown menu.</li> <li>2. Enter the desired search terms in the Common Name, Serial Number, or Issuer Common Name field.</li> <li>3. Select a certificate attribute from the dropdown list and if required add more certificate attributes to the search criteria by clicking the Add Certificate Attribute.</li> <li>4. Click Search.</li> </ol> <p>The matching server certificates are displayed on the Server Certificate page.</p> |
| <p><b>Actions</b></p>   | <p>Displays the list of actions you can perform on the certificates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Export Certificates</li> <li>• Download Certificates</li> </ul>   |

**Options available on the Client Certificate page (continued)**

| Options   | Description  |
|---|--|
|   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Delete</li> <li>• Change Status</li> <li>• Assign Group</li> <li>• Unassign Group</li> <li>• Add/Modify Comments</li> <li>• Certificate Attributes</li> <li>• Renew Certificate</li> <li>• Revoke Certificate</li> <li>• CA Switch</li> <li>• Revocation Check</li> </ul> |
| <b>Columns</b>  | Allows you to select the columns to be displayed on the Server Certificate inventory page.   |
| <b>Number of Rows per Page</b>  | Hover the mouse over the number of row displayed on the page, the Show popup opens and choose the no. of rows to be displayed on the page.   |
|  | Allows to switch between the certificate inventory pages.  |
|  | Allows to refresh the certificate inventory data.  |

The Client Certificate inventory list includes the following information:

**Column and Description Table**

| Column Name             | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Common Name</b>      | The common name of the certificate.  |
| <b>Discovery Source</b> | The source from which a certificate management system discovers and retrieves information about certificates |

**Column and Description Table (continued)**

| Column Name                  | Description  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Serial Number</b>         | A unique identifier assigned to the certificate by the CA during the issuance process. |
| <b>Group</b>                 | The certificate group name.  |
| <b>Issuer Common Name</b>    | Issuer name of the certificate.  |
| <b>Valid To (GMT)</b>        | The expiration date and time of a certificate, expressed in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). |
| <b>Status</b>                | The status of the certificate.   |
| <b>Certificate Authority</b> | Name of the Certificate Authority (CA).  |
| <b>Kube Attributes</b>       | Attributes configured in CA.   |

### Ingress Certificates

Certificates discovered from Kubernetes secrets and secrets associated with kubernetes ingresses are classified as Ingress certificates.

### Infrastructure Certificates

Certificates discovered from Kubernetes control plane components via feature gate “**Discover K8’s Infra Certificates**” are classified as Infrastructure certificates.

### ServiceMesh

KUBE+ provides the feature gate to secure pod-pod communication in a Kubernetes service mesh infrastructure with mTLS certificates signed by Enterprise PKI. If the feature gate “**Enable mTLS certificates for Service Mesh**” is enabled the mTLS certificates signed by AppViewX will be classified as Service Mesh certificates.

### Others

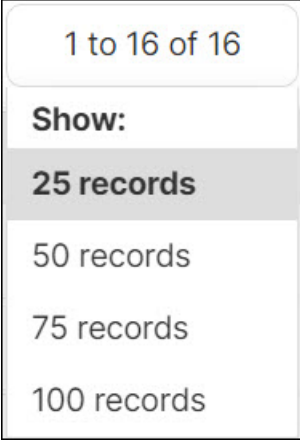
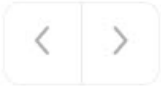
Certificates discovered from Kubernetes secrets and not associated with any ingresses (or) which does not classify into any of the above categories will be classified as Other certificates.

## Trust Store


The Trust Store certificate inventory consists of the following:

- Intermediate
- Root

**Options available on the Intermediate and Root Certificate page**

| Options   | Description   |
|---|---|
| <b>Advanced Search</b>  | Allows you to perform a quick search for specific data. Clicking on the search bar dropdown opens the <b>Advanced Search</b> window.  |
| <b>All</b>  | Allows you to filter the certificates by their Certificate Authority (CA).  |
| <b>Actions</b>  | <p>Displays the list of actions you can perform on the certificates:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Export Certificates</li> <li>• Copy</li> <li>• Download</li> <li>• Delete</li> <li>• Chain of Trust Preference</li> <li>• Certificate Attributes</li> </ul> |
| <b>Columns</b>  | Allows you to select the columns to be displayed on the Client Certificate inventory page.  |
| <b>Number of Rows per Page</b>  | <p>hover the mouse over the number of row displayed on the page, the Show popup opens and choose the no. of rows to be displayed on the page.</p>    |
|  | Allows to switch between the certificate inventory pages.   |

**Options available on the Intermediate and Root Certificate page (continued)**

| Options   | Description                                       |
|---|---|
|  | Allows to refresh the certificate inventory data. |

The Trust Store certificate inventory list includes the following information:

**Column and Description Table**

| Column Name                     | Description  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <b>Common Name</b>              | The common name of the certificate.  |
| <b>Certificate Authority</b>    | Name of the Certificate Authority (CA).  |
| <b>Serial Number</b>            | A unique identifier assigned to the certificate by the CA during the issuance process.   |
| <b>Valid From (GMT)</b>         | The start date and time of a certificate, expressed in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).  |
| <b>Valid To (GMT)</b>           | The expiration date and time of a certificate, expressed in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).   |
| <b>Issuer Organization</b>      | The name of the issuer organization of the certificate that acts as the CA.  |
| <b>Issuer Organization Unit</b> | The name of the issuer organization unit of the certificate that acts as the CA.   |
| <b>Key Algorithm &amp; Size</b> | The key type of the certificate such as: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. RSA</li> <li>2. ECDSA</li> </ol> and sizes such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2048/4096/3072 bit length for RSA.</li> <li>256 / 384 / 521 bit length for ECDSA.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Signature</b>                | The private key of the certificate issuer.   |

**Column and Description Table (continued)**

| Column Name                    | Description   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <b>Discovery Source</b>        | The source from which a certificate management system discovers and retrieves information about certificates. |
| <b>Discovered File Name(s)</b> | The name of the file discovered during a discovery process.   |
| <b>Application(s)</b>          | The applications that use the certificates.   |
| <b>Associated Object(s)</b>    | The objects that are linked to a particular certificate.  |

**Intermediate**

Intermediate certificate inventory is where the issuer certificates apart from the root certificate will be displayed. In the chain of trust, if there is more than one layer of the intermediate certificate (excluding root and end certificate), all those certificates will be shown in this inventory.

**Root**

Root certificate inventory is where the root certificate of all the issuer certificates will be maintained. For any chain of trust certificates, there can be only one root certificate.

# Chapter 6: Dashboard - Insights



- [Dashboard - Overview](#)
- [Viewing Dashboard Inventory](#)
- [Aligning the Reports](#)
- [Saving the Dashboard](#)
- [Downloading the Dashboard Page](#)
- [Scheduling and Emailing the Reports](#)
- [Refreshing the Dashboard](#)

## Dashboard - Overview

AppViewX KUBE+ has a few in-built reports that are available under the dashboard. These reports can be used to categorize certificates based on specific parameters.

The reports can be used to enforce the DevOps/CloudOps team to follow standard PKI practices across your Kubernetes clusters.

On the Dashboard page,

- you can manually refresh the each report by clicking the  (**Refresh**) icon
- Using the  (**Options**) icon and select any of the following options:
  - **Collapse/Expand** - This option allows you to collapse or expand the report.
  - **Minimize** - This option allows you to minimize the report.
  - **Download as PDF** - This option allows you to download the report as .pdf to your system.
  - **Export as Excel** - This option allows you to export the report data as Excel to your system.

.

The reports displayed on the dashboard are:

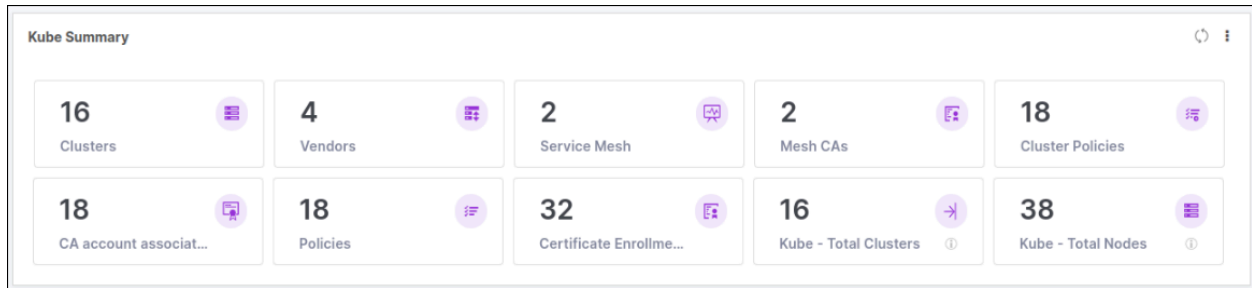
- [KUBE Summary](#)
- [Cluster Certificate Authority](#)

- [Clusters by Vendors](#)
- [Certificates by Namespaces](#)
- [Top 20 Clusters with Most Certificates](#)
- [Top Clusters with Expired Certificates](#)
- [Namespaces with Expired Certificates](#)
- [Certificate Expiry by Quarter](#)
- [Mesh Certificate Authority](#)

## KUBE Summary

The KUBE Summary dashboard provides insights around the usage and adoption of the KUBE+ product covering the below aspects.

- Number of clusters onboarded in KUBE+.
- Vendor summary to distinct the Kubernetes vendors in your organization.
- Service Mesh summary for usage and adoption of mTLS certificates from KUBE+ across service mesh infrastructure.
- Cluster Policy summary to view the adoption of varied Certificate Authorities across your clusters.
- CA Account summary to view the adoption of Issuer CA mapped to specific cluster policies.
- Certificate Enrollment summary to view number of certificate enrollments happened via KUBE+.
- License summary to identify the adoption and usage of KUBE+ based on cluster or number of Kubernetes nodes.

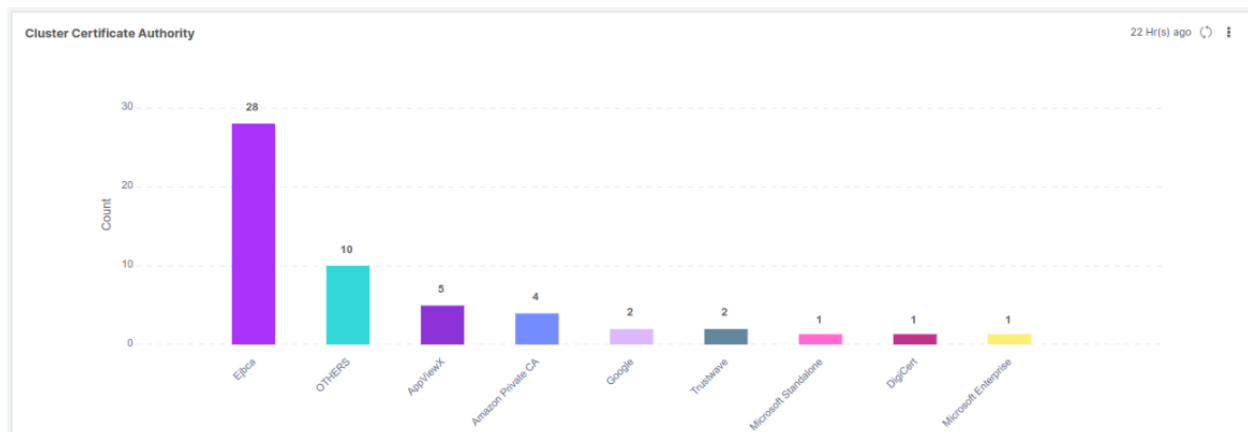


## Cluster Certificate Authority

The Cluster Certificate Authority dashboard provides insights around varied Certificate Authorities which are used for signing certificates which are deployed in Kubernetes clusters.

The report helps the Infosec team or the PKI administrator to understand the wide range of Certificate Authorities starting from Self Signed CA's to Internal and External CA's used by DevOps / CloudOps team for signing their workload certificates.

The reports can be further refined by filtering through the Certificate Authorities, allowing for more specific insights into the clusters, namespaces, and secrets that host certificates signed by a particular CA, facilitating targeted actions accordingly.

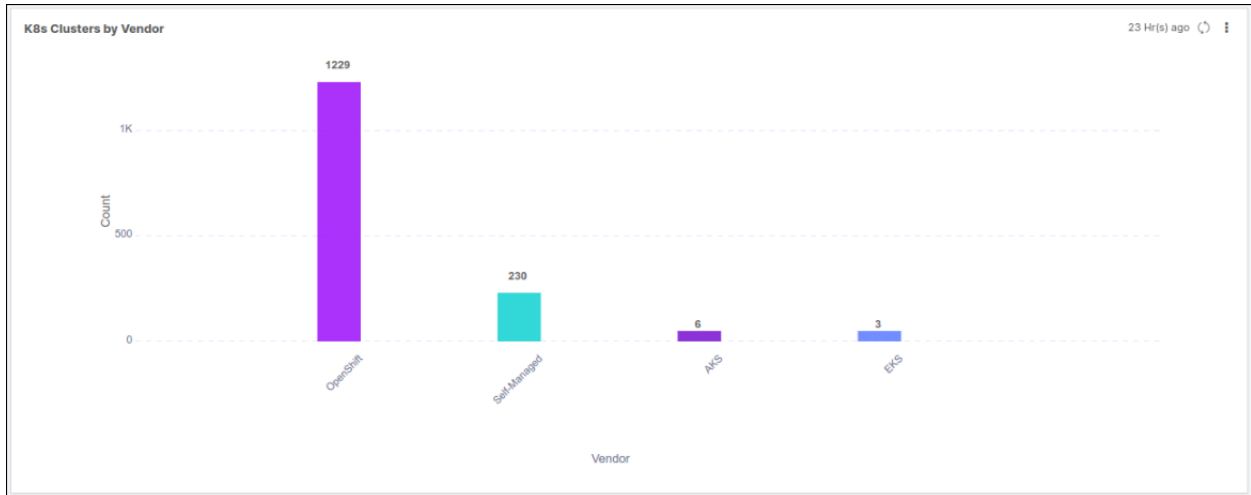


## Clusters by Vendors

The Clusters by Vendors dashboard provides insights around classification of clusters and their certificates managed in KUBE+ if in case your Kubernetes environments are spread across multiple Cloud Service Providers or Hybrid Cloud infrastructures.

The report helps the Infosec team or the PKI administrator to understand the wide range of certificates provisioned at a specific vendor ecosystem. The reports can be further refined by filtering through

the Kubernetes Vendor, allowing for insights into cluster name, namespace and secrets that host the certificates.

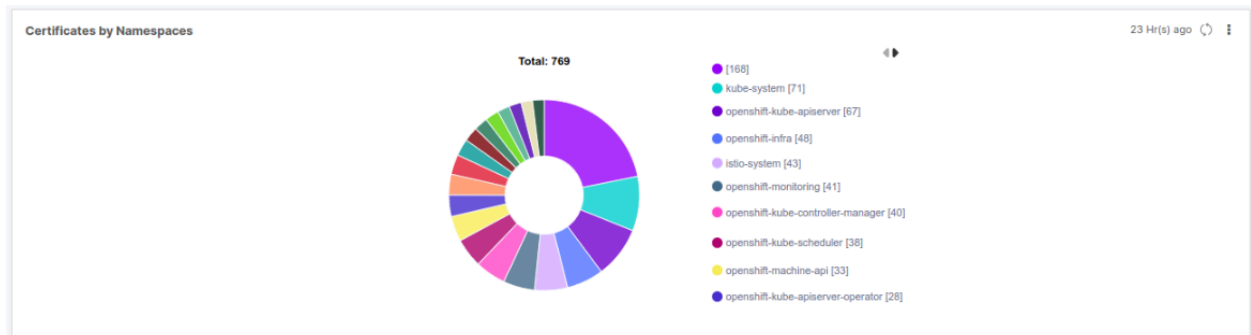


## Certificates by Namespaces

The Certificates by Namespaces dashboard provides insights around classification of certificates managed in KUBE+ by their associated namespaces.

The report helps the Infosec team or the PKI administrator to understand which namespaces or projects (in the case of OpenShift environments) have larger requirements for certificates to be provisioned or managed and also it helps them to streamline the certificate issuance process.

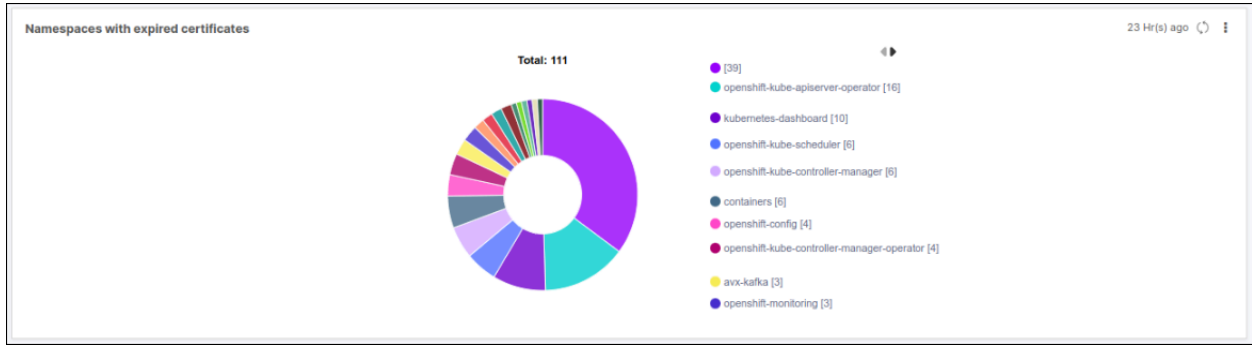
The reports can be further refined by filtering through the secret and the endpoints where the certificates are hosted like ingress and pods with the metadata around the Kubernetes cluster and vendor where the namespaces are discovered.



## Top 20 Clusters with Most Certificates

The dashboard provides insights around top 20 clusters which have a maximum of certificates provisioned compared to the other clusters in your infrastructure.





## Certificate Expiry by Quarter

The dashboard provides insights around the timeline of certificate expiries across your clusters. The expiration of these certificates are shown by Quarters which helps the Infosec or PKI team to plan for renewals or decommissioning of the certificates. The reports can also be timed by Year, Month and Days.



## Mesh Certificate Authority


The dashboard provides insights around the CA's configured for Service Mesh mTLS certificate signing.



## Viewing Dashboard Inventory

All the dashboards of AppViewX are listed under the Dashboard inventory. From KUBE+ dashboard you can go to AppViewX's Dashboard inventory.


To view dashboard inventory:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > DASHBOARD**.
2. Click  (**Dashboard Inventory**) on the command bar.  
The Dashboard inventory is displayed.

## Aligning the Reports

You can drag and drop the reports within the dashboard to the new position and it can be aligned.


To align the reports within the dashboard:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > DASHBOARD**.
2. Drag and drop the reports to your preferred position.
3. Click the  (**Align**) icon.  
The reports are aligned to the new position.

## Saving the Dashboard

When you drag and drop the widgets to organize them in the dashboard, complete the following steps to save the changes:


To save a dashboard:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > DASHBOARD**.
2. After making necessary changes in the dashboard, click the  (**Save Dashboard**) button in the Command bar.
3. A pop-up message appears at the top of the dashboard, "**Dashboard saved successfully.**"

## Downloading the Dashboard Page

You can download the dashboard page as a pdf.


To download the dashboard page as pdf:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > DASHBOARD**.
2. Click the  (**Download as PDF**) button in the Command bar.  
The dashboard is downloaded to your machine as a pdf file.

## Scheduling and Emailing the Reports

You can schedule the reports and email them to the email IDs.

To schedule and email the reports:


1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > DASHBOARD**.
2. Click the  (**Schedule and Email Reports**) icon.
3. Enter the necessary details.

The reports will be generated and sent to the email IDs as configured.

## Refreshing the Dashboard

You have the option to refresh the data within the dashboard to display the most up-to-date reports..

To refresh the dashboard:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > DASHBOARD**.
2. Drag and drop the reports to your preferred position.
3. Click the  (**Refresh**) icon.

The reports are refreshed within the dashboard.

# Chapter 7: Policy Enforcement

- [Policy Enforcement Overview](#)
- [Certificate Authority \(CA\) Integration](#)
- [Groups](#)
- [Cluster Policy](#)



## Policy Enforcement Overview

To meet compliance and to ensure strong crypto standards PKI policies should be defined and enforced across all your Kubernetes clusters onboarded and managed in KUBE+.

The process for defining and enforcing the policy definition for your managed clusters is as follows.

1. **CA Integration** - Integrate AppViewX KUBE+ with your Internal or External CA's for signing the certificates for your Kubernetes workloads.
2. **CA Policy** - Define CA Policy to enforce your organization crypto standards and map them to Certificate Groups ( to categorize certificates based on business units).
3. **Enforce Cluster Policy** - Enforce dedicated CA Policy / PKI policy to one more cluster to promote secure and compliant certificate management practices.

On the CA Policy page,

- refresh the list, click the  (refresh) icon.
- go to the pages, click the  (navigation) icon.
- hover the mouse over the number of row displayed on the page, the Show popup opens and choose the no. of rows to be displayed on the page.

|               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
|               | 1 to 6 of 6 |
| <b>Show :</b> |             |
| 25 Records    |             |
| 50 Records    |             |
| 75 Records    |             |
| 100 Records   |             |

To view the list of policy, go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

- [Configuring Policy Details](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Amazon CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Amazon Private CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for DigiCert CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for EJBCA CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Entrust CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Entrust MPKI CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for GlobalSign Atlas CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for GlobalSign CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for GlobalSign MSSL CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for GoDaddy CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Google CA](#)

- [Configuring Policy for HashiCorp Vault CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Hydrant ID CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Let's Encrypt CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Microsoft Enterprise CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Microsoft Standalone CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Nexus CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for OpenTrust CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Symantec CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Trustwave CA](#)
- [Deleting a Policy](#)

## Configuring Policy Details

To configure a policy:

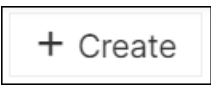
1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.





**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.


A rectangular button with a light gray background and a thin border, containing a plus sign followed by the text '+ Create'.

2. Click  on the menu bar.
3. On the **CA Policy : Create** page, enter/select the field information for the **Policy Details** section.

## Field and Description for the Policy Details Section

| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
| *Policy name  | Provide a unique name to identify the CA policy name.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters.   |
| Description   | Provide a description of the policy.   |
| *Policy Enforcement Type  | Select a policy enforcement type. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Strict</b> (default) - This enforces the standards defined in the policy where a user cannot modify any parameters.</li> <li>• <b>Suggestive</b> - This suggests users with policy parameters. A user can modify suggested values if required.</li> </ul> |
| Certificate Requests Need Approval  | When enabled, it will enforce the peer approval process for any requests made for new/renew/regenerate/reissue or revocation of certificates. Peer approving the request is defined in the approval workflow.  |
| Enable Access to Private Key  | When enabled allows the user to download private keys from the holistic view.  |
| Enable certificate push-bind access for a read-only user  | Enabling the option might allow the user with the read-only user group to perform certificate push, bind, and rollback operations from the holistic view.  |
| Validate issuer and root certificate for compliance   | Enabling the option would validate if the Issuer and Root of the certificate are also compliant with the standard defined in the policy.   |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |  |

- In the **CA details**, select a certificate authority, fill the necessary details, and then click **Save CA Details**.
- In the **Group selection** section, select a group(s) to apply the policy to all the certificates for the selected group.

 **Note:** Additionally, you can find the preferred group(s) by entering the search key word in the **Search** field. The search key words can be added as Favorites for future use.

6. In the **Compliance Check** section, you can enable the **Perform Compliance check** option to perform an immediate compliance check.



**Note:** Scheduled Compliance check will run periodically based on the Job scheduler settings.

7. Click **Create Policy**.

## Configuring Policy for Amazon CA

To configure an Amazon CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) to configure the following:
- **Policy Details** section
  - **Group Selection** section
  - **Compliance Check** section
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **Amazon** under the **CA details** on the left side of the screen.

### CA Details for Amazon Policy

| Name         | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| *CA Accounts | The Amazon CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy. |





**Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

5. Click **Add**.
6. You can use the delete icon against the CA account to delete the configuration.

### Certificate Parameter - Field and Description Table

| Field     | Description          |
|-----------|----------------------|
| Host Name | Enter the host name. |

| Field                           | Description  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <b>Allowed Domain Names</b>     | As you type the domain name, the matching domain names are displayed. Select the desired domain names.   |
| <b>Common Name</b>              | <p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.)</p> </div>                                    |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> | <p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@)</p> </div> |

7. Click **Save CA Details** to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **Amazon** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
8. Click **Create Policy**.  
The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

## Configuring Policy for Amazon Private CA

- You must configure the CA setting with Amazon Private CA credentials.
- You must have validated and fetched the Amazon Intermediate CAs along with the issuer region details in the CA settings page.

To configure an Amazon Private CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.





**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
  - **Policy Details**
  - **Group Selection**
  - **Compliance Check**
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **Amazon Private CA** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

### CA Details - Field and Description Table


| Field                  | Description   |
|------------------------|---|
| * <b>CA Account</b>    | Select the certificate authority account.                                 |
| * <b>Issuer Region</b> | Select the issuer region from the dropdown list.                          |
| * <b>Issuer Name</b>   | Select the issuer name from the dropdown list.                            |
| * <b>Validity</b>      | Enter the validity period for the certificate. The available options are: |



| Field                          | Description   |      |        |     |      |      |    |                     |
|--------------------------------|---|------|--------|-----|------|------|----|---------------------|
|                                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Days</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in days, to choose one in certificate enrolment.</li> <li>• <b>Month</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in Months, to choose one in certificate enrolment.</li> <li>• <b>Year</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in Year, to choose one in certificate enrolment.</li> </ul>   |      |        |     |      |      |    |                     |
| * <b>Bit Length - Key Type</b> | <p>All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit Length</b>. You can select one or more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type</b> from the dropdown list.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy.</p> <p>Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate. The Amazon Private CA supports below Bit type and Length.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Type</th> <th>Length</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">RSA</td> <td>2048</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4096</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EC</td> <td>prime256v1 sec384r1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Type | Length | RSA | 2048 | 4096 | EC | prime256v1 sec384r1 |
| Type                           | Length  |      |        |     |      |      |    |                     |
| RSA                            | 2048  |      |        |     |      |      |    |                     |
|                                | 4096  |      |        |     |      |      |    |                     |
| EC                             | prime256v1 sec384r1   |      |        |     |      |      |    |                     |
| * <b>Hash Function</b>         | <p>Supported <b>Hash Function(s)</b> are listed. You can select one or more than one <b>Hash Function</b> from the dropdown list. The supported hash functions are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SHA256</li> <li>• SHA384</li> <li>• SHA512.</li> </ul>   |      |        |     |      |      |    |                     |
| * <b>Signature Algorithm</b>   | <p>Select the SignAlgorithm from the dropdown list. The available options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SHA256WITHECDSA</li> <li>• SHA384WITHECDSA</li> </ul>   |      |        |     |      |      |    |                     |

| Field  | Description   |
|--|---|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SHA512WITHECDSA</li> <li>• SHA256WITHRSA</li> <li>• SHA384WITHRSA</li> <li>• SHA512WITHRSA.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> The Issuer will print the issuer algorithm that the users selected in the Signature Algorithm field.         </div> |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin: 10px auto; width: 80%;">  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.         </div> |   |

5. In the **Certificate parameters** section, enter/select the following details.

#### Certificate parameters - Field and Description Table

| Field                    | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>Common Name</b>       | <p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.)         </div> |
| <b>Organization</b>      | <p>You can provide the organization's name. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Organization Unit</b> | <p>You can provide an organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Locality</b>          | <p>You can provide a locality.</p>  |

| Field   | Description   |
|---|---|
|   | The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.   |
| <b>State</b>  | You can provide state.<br><br>The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  |
| <b>Country code</b>   | You can provide a country code.<br><br>The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  |
| <b>Email</b>  | You can provide an organization unit mail address.<br><br>The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b>   | <p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@) .</p> </div> |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.</p> </div> |   |

6. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **Amazon** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
7. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.

The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

## Configuring Policy for DigiCert CA

To configure a DigiCert CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section, to configure the following:
  - **Policy Details**
  - **Group Selection**
  - **Compliance Check**
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click digicert in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

### CA Details - Field and Description Table


| Field                     | Description   |
|---------------------------|---|
| * <b>CA Account</b>       | The GlobalSign CA accounts configured in CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.   |
| * <b>Division</b>         | Select the division from the dropdown list.   |
| * <b>Certificate Type</b> | The <b>Certificate Types</b> corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more <b>Certificate Type</b> from the list to create the policy.  |
| * <b>Validity</b>         | Enter the validity period for the certificate. The available options are:<br><br><b>Days</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in days, to choose one in certificate enrolment.<br><br><b>Month</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in Months, to choose one in certificate enrolment. <b>Year</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in Year, to choose one in certificate enrolment. |



**Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

5. In the **Vendor Specific Details section**, select/enter the details as listed in the table.

**Vendor Specific Details**

| Field   | Description                                    |
|---|--|
| * <b>Server Type</b>  | Select the server type from the dropdown list. |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |  |

6. Click the **Add** button.


The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.


7. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.


8. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function.**

9. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

**Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table**

| Name                     | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <b>Common Name</b>       | <p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested.</p> <p><b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.)         </div> |
| <b>Organization</b>      | <p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>SubjectOrganization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The organization</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Organization Unit</b> | <p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while</p>  |

| Name                            | Description   |
|---------------------------------|---|
|                                 | performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.   |
| <b>Locality</b>                 | <p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The locality</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>State</b>                    | <p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The state</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Country code</b>             | <p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Email</b>                    | <p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> | <p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN)</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@) </div> |

| Name  | Description |
|---|-------------|
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |             |

- Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **DigiCert** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
- Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
- The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

## Configuring Policy for EJBCA CA


To configure an EJBCA CA policy:

- Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.  
On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.


- Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
- Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
  - **Policy Details**
  - **Group Selection**
  - **Compliance Check**
- On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **EJBCA** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

| Field   | Description   |
|---|---|
| <b>*CA Accounts</b>   | The EJBCA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy. |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

- In the **Vendor Specific Details** section, select/enter the details as listed in the table:

**Vendor Specific Details Section - Field and Description Table**

| Field                            | Description                               |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <b>End entity user name</b>      | Enter the name of the end entity user.    |
| <b>*End entity Profile name</b>  | Enter the name of the end entity profile. |
| <b>*Issuer Common Name</b>       | Enter the common user name.               |
| <b>*Certificate Profile Name</b> | Enter a certificate profile name.         |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

6. Click the **Add** button.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.


7. You can use the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

8. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function**.

**Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table**


| Name                          | Description   | Purpose  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>*Bit Length - Key Type</b> | All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit Length</b> . You can select one (or) more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> from the drop-down.  | The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate. |
| <b>*ECDSA curve</b>           | When <b>Key Type</b> is selected as EC, <b>ECDSA curve</b> corresponding to selected <b>Key Type</b> is listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>ECDSA curve</b> from the drop-down. for a certificate. | The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend            |

| Name                  | Description   | Purpose   |
|-----------------------|---|---|
|                       |   | using P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.   |
| <b>*Hash Function</b> | Supported <b>Hash Function(s)</b> are listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>Hash Function(s)</b> from the drop-down. | The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate. |



 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

9. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

#### Certificate parameters - Field and Description Table

| Name                | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| <b>Common Name</b>  | <p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com.<br/>           Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).         </div> |
| <b>Organization</b> | <p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The organization</b> is enforced</p>  |

| Name                            | Description   |
|---------------------------------|---|
|                                 | while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.   |
| <b>Organization Unit</b>        | <p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> |
| <b>Locality</b>                 | <p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The locality</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>State</b>                    | <p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The state</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Country code</b>             | <p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>                             |
| <b>Email</b>                    | <p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>             |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> | You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).   |

| Name   | Description  |
|--|--|
|  | <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@). </div> |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. </div> |  |

10. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark displays in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **EJBCA** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
11. Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
12. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

## Configuring Policy for Entrust CA


To configure an Entrust CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.  
On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.

 **Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
  - **Policy Details**
  - **Group Selection**
  - **Compliance Check**
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click Entrust in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

**CA Details - Field and Description Table**

| Field   | Description   |
|---|---|
| <b>*CA Account</b>  | The Entrust CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.  |
| <b>*Certificate Type</b>  | The <b>Certificate Types</b> corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more <b>Certificate Type</b> from the list to create the policy.  |
| <b>*Validity</b>  | Enter the validity period for the certificate. The available options are:<br><br><b>Days</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in days, to choose one in certificate enrolment.<br><br><b>Month</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in Months, to choose one in certificate enrolment. <b>Year</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in Year, to choose one in certificate enrolment. |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

5. In the **Vendor Specific Details section**, select/enter the details as listed in the table:

| Field                    | Description                                 |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>Additional Emails</b> | Enter the valid email address in the field. |

6. Click the **Add** button.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.


7. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **the Remove** option to delete the configuration.

8. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function**.

**Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Descriptions Table**

| Name                          | Description  | Purpose   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>*Bit Length - Key Type</b> | All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit Length</b> . You can select one (or) more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> from the drop-down. | The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> to identify if they are compliant with the policy. Selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> is enforced while performing |


| Name                  | Description   | Purpose  |
|-----------------------|---|--|
|                       |   | any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.   |
| <b>*ECDSA curve</b>   | When <b>Key Type</b> is selected as EC, <b>ECDSA curve</b> corresponding to selected <b>Key Type</b> is listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>ECDSA curve</b> from the drop-down. for a certificate. | The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend to use P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling. |
| <b>*Hash Function</b> | Supported <b>Hash Function(s)</b> are listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>Hash Function(s)</b> from the drop-down.   | The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Hash Function</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.   |



 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

9. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

#### Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

| Name               | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| <b>Common Name</b> | <p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> |

| Name                     | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
|                          |  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).                         |
| <b>Organization</b>      | <p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The organization</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>        |
| <b>Organization Unit</b> | <p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> |
| <b>Locality</b>          | <p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The locality</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>State</b>             | <p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The state</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Country code</b>      | <p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they</p>   |

| Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
|   | are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.   |
| <b>Email</b>  | You can provide an organization unit mail address.<br>The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b>   | You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).<br>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.<br><br><div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@). </div> |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;">  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. </div> |   |

10. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Entrust** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
11. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
12. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

## Configuring Policy for Entrust MPKI CA

To configure an Entrust MPKI CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.  
On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
  - **Policy Details**
  - **Group Selection**
  - **Compliance Check**
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click Entrust MPKI in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section:

**CA Details - Field and Description Table**


| Field                         | Description  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <b>*CA Accounts</b>           | <p>The Entrust CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.</li> <li>• The selected CA account will be listed in the <b>CA Accounts</b> table.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>*Bit Length - Key Type</b> | <p>All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit Length</b>. You can select one (or) more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> |
| <b>*Hash Function</b>         | <p>Supported <b>Hash Function(s)</b> are listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>Hash Function(s)</b> from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Hash Function</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>   |





**Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.


5. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards. The following table provides the field description under the **Certificate parameters** section:

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

| Name                     | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>Common Name</b>       | <p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.) . </div> |
| <b>Organization</b>      | <p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The organization</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Organization Unit</b> | <p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Locality</b>          | <p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The locality</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>State</b>             | <p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The state</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Country code</b>      | <p>You can provide a country code.</p>  |

| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
|   | The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  |
| <b>Email</b>  | You can provide an organization unit mail address.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.   |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b>   | <p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN)</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@). </div> |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;">  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. </div> |  |

6. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Entrust MPKI** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.

 **Note:** The Pop-up message is displayed as **Entrust MPKI - CA details added**.

7. Refer **Configuring Policy Details** section to configure the following:
- **Group Selection** section
  - **Compliance Check** section
8. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
9. The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

## Configuring Policy for GlobalSign Atlas CA

**Before You Begin:** The prerequisites for configuring the policy are as follows:

- Certificate Group(s) must be available to map the policy to them.
- CA accounts (settings) must be available to which the policy is going to be created.
- AppViewX permission required (Accounts > Roles - Click here to check Accounts management).

To configure policy for GlobalSign Atlas CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.


2. Click **+ Create** button to configure GlobalSign Atlas custom policy.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:
  - Policy Details section
  - Group Selection section
  - Compliance Check section
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **GlobalSign Atlas** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the screen.

The updated fields for the CA are displayed on the right side of page.

**CA Details - Field and Description Table**

| Field Name   | Field Type | Description  | Validation |
|--------------|------------|--|------------|
| *CA Accounts | Dropdown   | The GlobalSign Atlas CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed here. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy. |            |
| *Validity    | Text       | Enter the validity period for the certificate. The available options are:  |            |

| Field Name             | Field Type            | Description   | Validation |
|------------------------|-----------------------|---|------------|
|                        |                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Days</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in days, to choose one in certificate enrolment.</li> <li>• <b>Month</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in Months, to choose one in certificate enrolment.</li> <li>• <b>Year</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in Year, to choose one in certificate enrolment.</li> </ul> |            |
| *Bit Length - Key Type | Multi-select dropdown | <p>All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length. You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are compliant with the policy.</p> <p>Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced</p>                      |            |

| Field Name  | Field Type            | Description  | Validation |
|---|-----------------------|--|------------|
|   |                       | while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.  |            |
| <b>*Hash Function</b>   | Multi-select dropdown | Supported Hash Function(s) are listed here. You can select one (or) more Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.<br><br>The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are compliant with the policy. Selected Hash Function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate. |            |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |                       |  |            |

5. Enter the desired values above and click **Add**.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.


6. You can use the **Edit** (pencil) option in the table to modify the configuration and the **Remove** (bin) option to delete the configuration.

7. Enter values in the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

**Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table**

| Field Name                   | Field Type            | Description  | Validation |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|--|------------|
| <b>*Host Name</b>            | Text                  | Enter the hostname for the certificate.<br><br>The hostname should not start and end with a dot/full stop (.)  |            |
| <b>*Allowed Domain Names</b> | Text                  | Enter only the white-listed domain names.<br><br>Press enter after adding the domain name. multiple domain names can be added.   |            |
| <b>Common Name</b>           | Multi-select dropdown | You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com<br><br>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.<br><br>Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to |            |

| Field Name | Field Type | Description   | Validation |
|------------|------------|---|------------|
|            |            | request certificates with domain.com.<br><br>Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.) |            |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

8. Click the **Save CA Details** button.
9. Select groups from the **Group selection** section and indicate for **Compliance check** using the toggle button in the respective section.
10. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.

The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

## Configuring Policy for GlobalSign CA

To configure a GlobalSign CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.




**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
  - **Policy Details**
  - **Group Selection**
  - **Compliance Check**
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **GlobalSign** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.
5. In the **Vendor Specific Details** section, select/enter the details as listed in the table.

## Vendor Specific Details - Fields and Description Table

| Field                                 | Description  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| * <b>Incorporating Agency Reg. No</b> | Enter the agency registration number.                |
| * <b>Designation</b>                  | Enter the designation.                               |
| * <b>Business Category</b>            | Select the business category from the dropdown list. |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

6. Click the **Add** button.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.

7. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.


8. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve,** and **Hash Function.**

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section:

## CA Details - Field and Description Table


| Name                           | Description   | Purpose  |
|--------------------------------|---|--|
| * <b>Bit Length - Key Type</b> | All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit Length</b> . You can select one (or) more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> from the drop-down.  | The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate. |
| * <b>ECDSA curve</b>           | When <b>Key Type</b> is selected as EC, <b>ECDSA curve</b> corresponding to selected <b>Key Type</b> is listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>ECDSA curve</b> from the drop-down. for a certificate. | The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> is enforced while performing certificate request  |

| Name                  | Description   | Purpose   |
|-----------------------|---|---|
|                       |   | operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend using P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.   |
| <b>*Hash Function</b> | Supported <b>Hash Function(s)</b> are listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>Hash Function(s)</b> from the drop-down. | The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate. |



 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

9. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

#### Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

| Name                | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>Common Name</b>  | <p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.) </div> |
| <b>Organization</b> | <p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The</b></p>  |

| Name                            | Description  |
|---------------------------------|--|
|                                 | <b>organization</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.  |
| <b>Organization Unit</b>        | You can provide an organization unit.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate. |
| <b>Locality</b>                 | You can provide a locality.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The locality</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.   |
| <b>State</b>                    | You can provide state.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The state</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.   |
| <b>Country code</b>             | You can provide a country code.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.                             |
| <b>Email</b>                    | You can provide an organization unit mail address.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the mail address provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.           |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> | You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN)<br><br>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  |

| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
|   |  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@). |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |  |

10. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the GlobalSign option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
11. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
12. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

## Configuring Policy for GlobalSign MSSL CA

To configure a GlobalSign MSSL CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.  
On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.


 **Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** button to configure GlobalSign MSSL based policy.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
  - **Policy Details** section
  - **Group Selection** section
  - **Compliance Check** section
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **GlobalSign MSSL** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the screen.

The following table provides the field description under **CA Details** section:

CA Details - Field and Description Table

| Name                                    | Type   | Mandatory | Description  | Validation |
|---|--------|-----------|--|------------|
| <b>CA Accounts</b>                      | Select | Yes       | The GlobalSign MSSL CA accounts configured on the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.   | NA         |
| <b>Product Type</b>                     | Select | Yes       | All Managed SSL Product Types require that the Organization's information and at least one Domain be registered in the Managed SSL account prior to ordering.  | NA         |
| <b>Signature Algorithm</b>              | Select | Yes       | Select the <b>Signature Algorithm</b> from the drop-down list.   | NA         |
| <b>MSSL Profile Allowed Domain Name</b> | Select | Yes       | Select the <b>MSSL Profile Allowed Domain Name</b> from the drop-down list.  | NA         |
| <b>Validity</b>                         | Text   | Yes       | Provide the value and press <b>Enter</b> . Enforce <b>Certificate Validity</b> period for selected Certificate Type.<br>The certificate validity of GlobalSign MSSL CA is represented in Day(s) and Year(s). One (or) more than one period can be added. | NA         |


 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

5. Select **CA accounts**, **Product Type**, **Signature Algorithm**, **MSSL Profile Allowed Domain Name**, and **Validity** under **CA details** section and provide **Validity** period.
6. Click **Add** button. The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.
7. You can use **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

The following table provides the field description under the **CA Details** section:

**Bit Length and ECDSA curve- Field and Description Table**

| Name                         | Type         | Mandatory | Description  | Purpose   |
|------------------------------|--------------|-----------|--|---|
| <b>Bit Length - Key Type</b> | Multi select | Yes       | All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit Length</b> . You can select one (or) more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> from the drop-down. | The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> to identify if they are compliant with the policy. Selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.  |
| <b>ECDSA Curve</b>           | Multi select | Yes       | The ECDSA curve's values get auto-populated once the details are configured/selected and the <b>Add</b> button is clicked.   | A discovered certificate's key elliptic curves will be compared against the information to identify if there is a complaint. Additionally, the below details will also be enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend using the P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling for a certificate. |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

8. Select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, Hash Function** under **CA details** section.

The following table provides the field description under the **Certificate parameters** section:


**Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table**

| Name               | Type | Mandatory | Description   | Validation  |
|--------------------|------|-----------|---|---|
| <b>Host Name</b>   | Text | No        | You can provide the hostname.   | The hostname should not start and end with a dot/fullstop(.).   |
| <b>Common Name</b> | Text | No        | You can provide the common name.For example, *.domain.com<br>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. | Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates |

| Name                     | Type | Mandatory | Description  | Validation   |
|--------------------------|------|-----------|--|--|
|                          |      |           | <b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.   | with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.). |
| <b>Organization</b>      | Text | No        | You can provide organization name.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>SubjectOrganization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if there are complaints. <b>Organization</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.                      | NA   |
| <b>Organization Unit</b> | Text | No        | You can provide an organizational unit.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if there is a Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. | NA   |
| <b>Locality</b>          | Text | No        | You can provide a locality.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Locality</b> is enforced while performing any certificate   | NA   |

| Name                            | Type      | Mandatory | Description   | Validation   |
|---------------------------------|-----------|-----------|---|--|
|                                 |           |           | request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  |  |
| <b>State</b>                    | Text      | No        | You can provide state.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if there is a complaint. <b>State</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.   | NA   |
| <b>Country code</b>             | Text      | No        | You can provide a country code.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if there are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.                     | NA   |
| <b>Email</b>                    | Text      | No        | You can provide the organization unit mail address.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the mail address provided in the policy to identify if there is a complaint. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. | NA   |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> | Text Area | No        | You can provide the subject's alternative name (SAN)  | Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, |

| Name | Type | Mandatory | Description   | Validation  |
|------|------|-----------|---|---|
|      |      |           | It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. | *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com.<br>Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@). |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

9. You can fill in the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.
10. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **GlobalSign MSSLOption** to indicate the details are successfully stored.
11. Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
12. The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

## Configuring Policy for GoDaddy CA

To configure a GoDaddy CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.


The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.

3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,

- **Policy Details**
- **Group Selection**
- **Compliance Check**


4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click GoDaddy in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

CA Details - Field and Description Table

| Field   | Description   |
|---|---|
| *CA Account   | The GoDaddy CA accounts configured in CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.  |
| *Certificate Type   | The <b>Certificate Types</b> corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more <b>Certificate Type</b> from the list to create the policy.  |
| *Validity   | Enter the validity period for the certificate. The available options are:<br><br><b>Days</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in days, to choose one in certificate enrolment.<br><br><b>Month</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in Months, to choose one in certificate enrolment. <b>Year</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in Year, to choose one in certificate enrolment. |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

5. In the **Vendor Specific Details section**, select/enter the details as listed in the table:


Vendor Specific Details section - Field and Description Table

| Field   | Description   |
|---|---|
| *Slot Size  | Select the size of the slot from the dropdown list. |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

6. Click the **Add** button.  
The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.
7. You can use **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
8. Select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, Hash Function** in the **CA details** section.

CA Details - Field and Description Table

| Name                   | Description   | Purpose   |
|------------------------|---|---|
| *Bit Length - Key Type | All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit</b> | The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against |


| Name  | Description   | Purpose   |
|---|---|---|
|   | <b>Length.</b> You can select one (or) more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> from the drop-down.  | the selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.  |
| <b>*ECDSA curve</b>   | When <b>Key Type</b> is selected as EC, <b>ECDSA curve</b> corresponding to selected <b>Key Type</b> is listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>ECDSA curve</b> from the drop-down. for a certificate. | The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend using P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling. |
| <b>*Hash Function</b>   | Supported <b>Hash Function(s)</b> are listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>Hash Function(s)</b> from the drop-down.   | The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.   |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |   |


9. You can fill **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

**Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table**

| Name               | Description  |
|--------------------|--|
| <b>Common Name</b> | You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com<br>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested.<br><b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. |

| Name                     | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
|                          |  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).                         |
| <b>Organization</b>      | <p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The organization</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>            |
| <b>Organization Unit</b> | <p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> |
| <b>Locality</b>          | <p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The locality</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>State</b>             | <p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The state</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Country code</b>      | <p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>                             |
| <b>Email</b>             | <p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p>   |

| Name                            | Description   |
|---------------------------------|---|
|                                 | The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> | <p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p> </div> |

10. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **GoDaddy** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
11. Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
12. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

## Configuring Policy for Google CA

To configure a Google CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.




**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
  - **Policy Details**
  - **Group Selection**
  - **Compliance Check**

4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **Google** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

#### CA Details - Field and Description Table


| Field   | Description   |
|---|---|
| <b>*CA Accounts</b>   | The Google CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.   |
| <b>*Issuer Location</b>   | The <b>Issuer Location</b> corresponding to the selected CA account is listed. Select an <b>Issuer Location</b> from the list to create the policy.   |
| <b>*Issuer Name</b>   | The <b>Issuer Name</b> corresponding to the selected issuer location is listed. Select an <b>Issuer Name</b> from the list to create the policy.  |
| <b>*Validity</b>  | Provide the value and press <b>Enter</b> . Enforce <b>Validity</b> period for selected Issuer Name. The validity for Google CA can be represented in Day(s)/ Month(s)/ Year(s). One (or) more than one <b>Validity</b> period can be added. |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

5. In the CA details section, select the **Bit Length -Key Type(s), ECDSA curve(s), and Hash Function(s)**.

#### Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table

| Name                          | Description  | Purpose  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>*Bit Length - Key Type</b> | All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit Length</b> . You can select one (or) more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> from the drop-down. | The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate. |
| <b>*ECDSA curve</b>           | When <b>Key Type</b> is selected as EC, <b>ECDSA curve</b> corresponding to selected <b>Key Type</b> is listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>ECDSA</b>   | The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> is enforced   |

| Name                  | Description   | Purpose   |
|-----------------------|---|---|
|                       | <b>curve</b> from the drop-down. for a certificate.   | while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend to use P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.   |
| <b>*Hash Function</b> | Supported <b>Hash Function(s)</b> are listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>Hash Function(s)</b> from the drop-down. | The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate. |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.


6. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.


For the Policy Enforcement Type = **Strict**



For the Policy Enforcement Type = **Suggestive**

The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

**Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table**

| Name                       | Description   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <b>Hostname</b>            | <p>This text field is displayed if the <b>Policy Enforcement Type = Strict</b> or <b>Suggestive</b>.</p> <p>Enter the unique name or label for the host.</p> <p>The field is <b>mandatory</b> only when the <b>Policy Enforcement Type = Strict</b>.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> The hostname should not start or end with a dot. </div> |
| <b>Allowed Domain Name</b> | <p>This text field is displayed if the <b>Policy Enforcement Type = Strict</b> or <b>Suggestive</b>.</p> <p>The field is <b>mandatory</b> only when the <b>Policy Enforcement Type = Strict</b>.</p> <p>Enter the valid domain name (two parts separated by a dot, such as example.com)</p>   |

| Name                       | Description  |
|----------------------------|--|
| <b>Blocked Domain Name</b> | <p>This text field is displayed only if the <b>Policy Enforcement Type = Suggestive</b>.</p> <p>Enter the domain names (two parts separated by a dot, such as example.com) that need to be blocked.</p> <p>.</p>   |
| <b>Common Name</b>         | <p>This is a non-editable field. It has comma-separated values of possible domain names which are allowed. It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).</p> </div> |
| <b>Organization</b>        | <p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The organization</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Organization Unit</b>   | <p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Locality</b>            | <p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The locality</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>State</b>               | <p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The state</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, and Renew, Regenerate.</p>  |

| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
| <b>Country code</b>   | <p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Email</b>  | <p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b>   | <p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p> </div> |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.</p> </div> |  |

7. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
8. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **the Google** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
9. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
10. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

## Configuring Policy for HashiCorp Vault CA

### Before You Begin

- Certificate Group(s) must be available to map the Policy to them.
- CA accounts (settings) must be available to which the policy is going to be created.
- Key Algorithm, Encryption Type must be available under the CA accounts.
- AppViewX permission required (Accounts > Roles - Click here to check Accounts management).

To configure a HashiCorp Vault CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.




**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
3. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, enter details in the **Policy Details** section as described in the tables below.

#### Policy Details - Field and Description Table

| Field Name                           | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <b>*Policy Name</b>                  | Provide a unique name to identify the CA policy name.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', and '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters.  |
| <b>Description</b>                   | Provide a description of the policy.  |
| <b>Type</b>                          | Select Strict (or) Suggestive. By default, Strict is selected.<br><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Strict</b> - This enforces the standards defined in the policy where a user cannot modify any parameters.</li> <li>• <b>Suggestive</b> - This suggests users with policy parameters. A user can modify suggested values if required.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Approval Required</b>             | When enabled, it will enforce the peer approval process for any requests made for new/renew/regenerate/reissue or revocation of certificates. Peer approving the request is defined in the approval workflow  |
| <b>Private Key Access</b>            | When enabled allows the user to download private keys from the holistic view.   |
| <b>Include Root and Intermediate</b> | Enabling the option would validate if the Issuer and Root of the certificate are also compliant with the standard defined in the policy.  |


| Field Name                               | Description |
|--|-------------|
| <b>certificates for compliance check</b> |             |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

4. In the **CA Details** section, a list box **Certificate Authority** on the left displays all the available CAs. Select **Hashicorp Vault**.
5. Update the following fields in the **CA Details** section as described in the table below.

#### CA Details - Field and Description Table

| Field Name            | Description   |
|-----------------------|---|
| <b>*CA Settings</b>   | The dropdown contains the names of the accounts created.  |
| <b>*Secret Engine</b> | The single-select dropdown contains all the secret engines associated with the account.<br>In a secret engine, a role describes an identity with a set of permissions, groups, or policies you want to attach to a user of the secret engine. User identity is often mapped to a specific role. Hence, a single secret engine needs to be selected to populate Role (below) specific to it. |
| <b>*Role</b>          | The dropdown contains all the roles mapped to the secret engine.  |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

6. Click the **Add** button.

The **HashiCorp Vault CA Details** table below the Add button displays the selected values in the dropdown.

Multiple values can be configured based on the available CA settings and secret engines with different *Bit Length - Key Type* and *Hash Function*. The supported values are as follows:

- a. **Key Type:** RSA, EC
- b. **Bit Length:**

- i. *RSA key type*: 2048 (default), 3072, or 4096
  - ii. *EC key type*: 224, 256 (default), 384, or 521
- c. **Hash Function**: SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512

The CA Details table has options to View, Edit, and Delete.

- a. To view the CA details, click the View link in the View column - The CA account details are displayed in a pop-up window with the *Bit Length - Key Type* and *Hash Function*.
- b. To update the CA details, select the edit or pencil icon in the Edit column.
- c. To delete the CA details, select the bin or delete icon.


7. Update the Certificate Parameters in the CA details section as described in the table below.



**Note:** The parameters are useful during certificate enrollment. One can pre-populate the listed certificate parameters when setting-up/requesting a certificate.

#### Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

| Field Name                      | Description   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <b>Common Name</b>              | Enter the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or common name that exactly matches the web browser.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> The only special characters allowed are the asterisk (*), hyphen (-), and period (.). |
| <b>Organization</b>             | The name of the organization.   |
| <b>Organization Unit</b>        | The name of the organization unit.  |
| <b>Locality</b>                 | The city in which the organization is located.  |
| <b>State</b>                    | The state in which the organization is located.   |
| <b>Country</b>                  | Country in which the organization is located.   |
| <b>Email</b>                    | The email ids of the organization contact.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Multiple comma-separated values are allowed.<br><br><i>Example:</i> admin@email.com, user@email.com  |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> | Enter the additional hostnames such as alternative websites or IP addresses that have to be protected with a single SSL certificate.  |

| Field Name   | Description  |
|--|--|
|  | <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The only special characters allowed are the asterisk (*), hyphen (-), period (.), and the at sign (@).</p> |
| <p> <b>Note:</b> The discovered certificate's parameters (Organization, Organization Unit, Locality, State, Country, and Email) will be compared against the same parameters provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. They are enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> |  |

- Click the **Save CA Details** button.

A green tick mark is displayed in the Certificate Authority pane against the HashiCorp Vault option to indicate the details are successfully saved.

- In the **Group Selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy. Refer to the **Certificate Group** section to add/update groups.
- Under the **Compliance Check** section, enable the **Perform Compliance Check** option to perform an immediate compliance check.
- Click the **Create Policy** button.  
The Policy is created successfully.

## Configuring Policy for Hydrant ID CA

To configure the Hydrant ID CA policy:

- Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

- Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
- Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
  - Policy Details**
  - Group Selection**
  - Compliance Check**

4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **Hydrant ID** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.
5. In the **Vendor Specific Details section**, select the challenge type from the dropdown list.
6. Click the **Add** button.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.

7. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
8. Select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, Hash Function in the CA details** section.

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section:

**Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table**


| Name                          | Description   | Purpose  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>*Bit Length - Key Type</b> | All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit Length</b> . You can select one (or) more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> from the drop-down.  | The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.   |
| <b>*ECDSA curve</b>           | When <b>Key Type</b> is selected as EC, <b>ECDSA curve</b> corresponding to selected <b>Key Type</b> is listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>ECDSA curve</b> from the drop-down. for a certificate. | The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend to use P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling. |
| <b>*Hash Function</b>         | Supported <b>Hash Function(s)</b> are listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>Hash Function(s)</b> from the drop-down.   | The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.  |





**Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

9. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards. The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

**Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table**

| Name                            | Description   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <p><b>Common Name</b></p>       | <p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).</p> </div> |
| <p><b>Organization</b></p>      | <p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The organization</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <p><b>Organization Unit</b></p> | <p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <p><b>Locality</b></p>          | <p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The locality</b> is enforced while performing</p>  |

| Name                            | Description   |
|---------------------------------|---|
|                                 | any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  |
| <b>State</b>                    | <p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The state</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Country code</b>             | <p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Email</b>                    | <p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> | <p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p> </div> |

| Name  | Description |
|---|-------------|
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |             |

- Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **the Hydrant ID** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
- Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.  
The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

## Configuring Policy for Let's Encrypt CA

To configure the Let's Encrypt CA policy:

- Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

- Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
- Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.

The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.

- Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:

- **Policy Details**
- **Group Selection**
- **Compliance Check**


- To configure a policy with LetsEncrypt details, click **LetsEncrypt** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.
- In the **Vendor Specific Details section**, select the challenge type from the dropdown list.
- Click the **Add** button.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.

- You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
- Select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, Hash Function in the CA details** section.


The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section:



**Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table**

| Name  | Description   | Purpose  |
|---|---|--|
| <b>*Bit Length - Key Type</b>   | All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit Length</b> . You can select one (or) more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> from the drop-down.  | The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.                                       |
| <b>*ECDSA curve</b>   | When <b>Key Type</b> is selected as EC, <b>ECDSA curve</b> corresponding to selected <b>Key Type</b> is listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>ECDSA curve</b> from the drop-down. for a certificate. | The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend to use P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling. |
| <b>*Hash Function</b>   | Supported <b>Hash Function(s)</b> are listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>Hash Function(s)</b> from the drop-down.   | The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |  |

10. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards. The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

| Name                     | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>Common Name</b>       | <p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.). </div> |
| <b>Organization</b>      | <p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The organization</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Organization Unit</b> | <p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Locality</b>          | <p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The locality</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>State</b>             | <p>You can provide state.</p>   |

| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
|   | <p>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints.</p> <p><b>The state</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Country code</b>   | <p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Email</b>  | <p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b>   | <p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p> </div> |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.</p> </div> |  |

- Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **LetsEncrypt** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.

- Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.  
The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

## Configuring Policy for Microsoft Enterprise CA

To configure the Microsoft Enterprise CA policy:

- Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.  
On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

- Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
- Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.

The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.

- Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:
  - Policy Details**
  - Group Selection**
  - Compliance Check**
- To configure a policy with Microsoft Enterprise details, click **Microsoft Enterprise** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the screen.

The following table provides the field description under **CA Details** section:

**CA Details - Field and Description Table**

| Name                     | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>*CA Accounts</b>      | The Microsoft Enterprise CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy. |
| <b>*MS Template List</b> | The MS template(s) configured for the selected CA account are listed. Select MS template(s) from the list to associate with the policy.       |



**Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

- Select **CA accounts** and **MS Template List** under **CA details** section.
- Click **Add** button. The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.

8. You can use **the Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
9. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function**.

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section:

**Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table**

| Name                          | Description   | Purpose  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>*Bit Length - Key Type</b> | All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit Length</b> . You can select one (or) more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> from the drop-down.  | The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.   |
| <b>*ECDSA curve</b>           | When <b>Key Type</b> is selected as EC, <b>ECDSA curve</b> corresponding to selected <b>Key Type</b> is listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>ECDSA curve</b> from the drop-down. for a certificate. | The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend to use P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling. |
| <b>*Hash Function</b>         | Supported <b>Hash Function(s)</b> are listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>Hash Function(s)</b> from the drop-down.   | The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.  |






**Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

10. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards. The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

**Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table**

| Name               | Description  |
|--------------------|--|
| <b>Common Name</b> | You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com |

| Name                     | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|
|                          | <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com.<br/>           Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).         </div> |
| <b>Organization</b>      | <p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The organization</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Organization Unit</b> | <p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Locality</b>          | <p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The locality</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>State</b>             | <p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The state</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Country code</b>      | <p>You can provide a country code.</p>   |

| Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
|   | The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.   |
| <b>Email</b>  | You can provide an organization unit mail address.<br>The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b>   | You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN)<br>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.<br><br><div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@). </div> |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. </div> |   |

11. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **the Microsoft Enterprise** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
12. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
13. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

## Configuring Policy for Microsoft Standalone CA

To configure the Microsoft Standalone CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
3. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.

The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.

4. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:


- **Policy Details**
- **Group Selection**
- **Compliance Check**

5. To configure a policy with Microsoft Standalone details, click **Microsoft Standalone** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the screen.

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section:

**CA Details - Field and Description Table**

| Name         | Description  |
|--------------|--|
| *CA Accounts | The Microsoft Standalone accounts configured in CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy. |




**Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

6. Select **CA accounts** in the **CA details** section.
7. Click **Add** button. The CA account is saved to the table and confirmation message displays.
8. You can use the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
9. In the **CA details** section, select the **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function**.

The following table provides the description of other fields in the **CA Details** section:

**Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table**

| Name                   | Description  | Purpose   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| *Bit Length - Key Type | All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit Length</b> . | The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against |


| Name  | Description  | Purpose  |
|---|--|--|
|   | You can select one (or) more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> from the drop-down.  | the selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.   |
| <b>*ECDSA curve</b>   | When <b>Key Type</b> is selected as EC, <b>ECDSA curve</b> corresponding to selected <b>Key Type</b> is listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>ECDSA curve</b> from the drop-down for a certificate. | The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend to use P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling. |
| <b>*Hash Function</b>   | Supported <b>Hash Function(s)</b> are listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>Hash Function(s)</b> from the drop-down.  | The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |  |  |



10. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

The following table provides the field description under **Certificate parameters** section:

**Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table**

| Name               | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| <b>Common Name</b> | You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.<br>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested.<br><b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. |

| Name                     | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
|                          |  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).                         |
| <b>Organization</b>      | <p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The organization</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>        |
| <b>Organization Unit</b> | <p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> |
| <b>Locality</b>          | <p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The locality</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>State</b>             | <p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The state</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Country code</b>      | <p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing</p>  |

| Name   | Description  |
|--|--|
|  | any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.   |
| <b>Email</b>   | <p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b>  | <p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@). </div> |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. </div> |  |

11. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Microsoft Standalone** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
12. Click the **+ Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
13. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

## Configuring Policy for Nexus CA

To configure the Nexus CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.  
On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
3. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.

The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.

4. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:
  - **Policy Details**
  - **Group Selection**
  - **Compliance Check**
5. To configure a policy with Nexus details, click **Nexus** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the screen.
6. Select **CA accounts and Certificate Type** under the **CA details** section and provide the **Validity** period.

The following table provides the field description under **CA Details** section:

**CA Details - Field and Description Table**

| Name                      | Description  |
|---------------------------|--|
| * <b>CA Accounts</b>      | The Nexus CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.   |
| * <b>Certificate Type</b> | The <b>Certificate Types</b> corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more <b>Certificate Type</b> from the list to create the policy.   |
| * <b>Validity</b>         | Provide the value and press <b>Enter</b> . Enforce <b>Validity</b> period for selected Certificate Type(s). The validity for Nexus CA can be represented in Day(s)/ Month(s)/ Year(s). One (or) more than one <b>Validity</b> period can be added. |



**Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

7. Once the CA account and the validity fields are populated, a new section called **Vendor Specific Details** is enabled. Select the **Procedure** field from the drop-down list and click **Add** to save the CA details to the table. You can also use the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

Select the details as follows:

- a. **Case 1** - Select **Server** check box, the procedures listed in the **Procedures** dropdown will be - Mapped to servers and default procedures.
- b. **Case 2** - Select **Client** check box, the procedures listed in the **Procedures** dropdown will be - mapped to client and default procedures.
- c. **Case 2** - Select **Server** and **Client** check box, the procedures listed in the **Procedures** dropdown will be - mapped to server, client, and default procedures.



**Note:** The procedures displayed in the dropdown should have the **cert type** appended in the value. For example: - *Procedure name\_Server/client/default/Code-Signing*


8. Click the **Add** button. The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.
9. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
10. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function**.

The following table provides the field description under **CA Details** section:

**Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table**

| Name                          | Description  | Purpose   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>*Bit Length - Key Type</b> | All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit Length</b> . You can select one (or) more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> from the drop-down.   | The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.  |
| <b>*ECDSA curve</b>           | When <b>Key Type</b> is selected as EC, <b>ECDSA curve</b> corresponding to selected <b>Key Type</b> is listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>ECDSA curve</b> from the drop-down for a certificate. | The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend using P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling. |
| <b>*Hash Function</b>         | Supported <b>Hash Function(s)</b> are listed. You can select one (or) more   | The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint   |


| Name | Description  | Purpose   |
|------|--|---|
|      | than one <b>Hash Function(s)</b> from the drop-down. | with the policy. Selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.



11. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

**Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table**

| Name                     | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>Common Name</b>       | <p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.). </div> |
| <b>Organization</b>      | <p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The organization</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Organization Unit</b> | <p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy</p>   |

| Name                            | Description  |
|---------------------------------|--|
|                                 | to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  |
| <b>Locality</b>                 | You can provide a locality.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The locality</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.                             |
| <b>State</b>                    | You can provide state.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The state</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.   |
| <b>Country code</b>             | You can provide a country code.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.                 |
| <b>Email</b>                    | You can provide an organization unit mail address.<br><br>The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate. |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> | You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).<br><br>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.   |

| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
|   |  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@). |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |  |

12. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **Nexus** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
13. Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
14. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

## Configuring Policy for OpenTrust CA

To configure the OpenTrust CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
3. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.

The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.


4. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:

- **Policy Details**
- **Group Selection**
- **Compliance Check**

5. To configure a policy with OpenTrust details, click OpenTrust in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section.


| Field                           | Description  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| *CA Account                     | The OpenTrust CA accounts configured in CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy. |
| *Certificate Management Profile | Select the certificate management profile from the dropdown list.  |
| *Zone                           | Select the zone from the dropdown list.  |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

6. In the **Profile Parameters** section, select/enter the details as listed in the table.

#### Profile Parameters Section - Field and Description Table

| Field               | Description                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| *Common Name        | Enter the common name for the policy. |
| Organizational Unit | Enter the organizational unit.        |
| Organization        | Enter the name of the organization.   |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

7. Click the **Add** button.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.

8. You can use the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.


9. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function**.

The following table provides the description of other fields in the **CA Details** section:

#### Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table

| Name                   | Description  | Purpose   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| *Bit Length - Key Type | All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit Length</b> . You can select one (or) more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> from the drop-down. | The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate |


| Name                  | Description   | Purpose  |
|-----------------------|---|--|
|                       |   | request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.   |
| <b>*ECDSA curve</b>   | When <b>Key Type</b> is selected as EC, <b>ECDSA curve</b> corresponding to selected <b>Key Type</b> is listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>ECDSA curve</b> from the drop-down. for a certificate. | The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend to use P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling. |
| <b>*Hash Function</b> | Supported <b>Hash Function(s)</b> are listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>Hash Function(s)</b> from the drop-down.   | The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.  |


 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.



10. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards. The following table provides the field description under the **Certificate parameters** section:

**Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table**

| Name               | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| <b>Common Name</b> | You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com<br><br>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. |

 **Note:** Use Asterisk (\*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, \*.domain.com will

| Name                     | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
|                          |  only allow users to request certificates with domain.com.<br>Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-),<br>Period (.).   |
| <b>Organization</b>      | <p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The <b>organization</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>        |
| <b>Organization Unit</b> | <p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> |
| <b>Locality</b>          | <p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The <b>locality</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>State</b>             | <p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaint. The <b>state</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Country code</b>      | <p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>                             |

| Name   | Description   |
|--|---|
| <b>Email</b>   | <p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b>  | <p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN)</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@). </div> |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. </div> |   |

11. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark displays in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **OpenTrust** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
12. Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
13. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

## Configuring Policy for Symantec CA

To configure the Symantec CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.  
On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.

 **Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.


2. Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
3. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.

The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.

4. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:
  - **Policy Details**
  - **Group Selection**
  - **Compliance Check**
5. To configure a policy with Symantec details, click **Symantec** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section.

**CA Details - Field and Description Table**

| Field   | Description   |
|---|---|
| * <b>CA Account</b>   | The Symantec CA accounts configured in CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.   |
| * <b>Certificate Type</b>   | The <b>Certificate Types</b> corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more <b>Certificate Type</b> from the list to create the policy.  |
| * <b>Validity</b>   | Enter the validity period for the certificate. The available options are:<br><br><b>Days</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in days, to choose one in certificate enrolment.<br><br><b>Month</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in Months, to choose one in certificate enrolment. <b>Year</b> - You can enter more than one validity period in Year, to choose one in certificate enrolment. |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

6. In the **Vendor Specific Details section**, select the server type from the dropdown list.
7. Click the **Add** button.  
The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.
8. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
9. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function**.

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section:

**Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table**


| Name                          | Description  | Purpose   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>*Bit Length - Key Type</b> | All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit Length</b> . You can select one (or) more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> from the drop-down.   | The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.  |
| <b>*ECDSA curve</b>           | When <b>Key Type</b> is selected as EC, <b>ECDSA curve</b> corresponding to selected <b>Key Type</b> is listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>ECDSA curve</b> from the drop-down for a certificate. | The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend using P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling. |
| <b>*Hash Function</b>         | Supported <b>Hash Function(s)</b> are listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>Hash Function(s)</b> from the drop-down.  | The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.   |





**Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

10. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards. The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

| Name                     | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <b>Common Name</b>       | <p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.). </div> |
| <b>Organization</b>      | <p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The organization</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Organization Unit</b> | <p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Locality</b>          | <p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The locality</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>State</b>             | <p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The state</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |

| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
| <b>Country code</b>   | <p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Email</b>  | <p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b>   | <p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p> </div> |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.</p> </div> |  |

11. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **the Symantec** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
12. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
13. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

## Configuring Policy for Trustwave CA

To configure the Trustwave CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
3. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.

The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.

4. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:

- **Policy Details**
- **Group Selection**
- **Compliance Check**

5. To configure a policy with Trustwave details, click **Trustwave** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the screen.
6. Select **CA accounts and Certificate Type** under the **CA details** section and provide the **Validity** period.

The following table provides the field description under **CA Details** section:

**CA Details - Field and Description Table**

| Name                      | Description  |
|---------------------------|--|
| * <b>CA Accounts</b>      | The Trustwave CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.   |
| * <b>Certificate Type</b> | The <b>Certificate Types</b> corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more <b>Certificate Type</b> from the list to create the policy.   |
| * <b>Validity</b>         | Provide the value and press <b>Enter</b> . Enforce <b>Validity</b> period for selected Certificate Type(s). The validity for Trustwave CA can be represented in Day(s)/ Month(s)/ Year(s). One (or) more than one <b>Validity</b> period can be added. |




**Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

7. Click the **Add** button. The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.
8. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
9. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function**.

The following table provides the field description under **CA Details** section:


**Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table**



| Name  | Description  | Purpose   |
|---|--|---|
| <b>*Bit Length - Key Type</b>   | All the <b>Key Types</b> are listed with corresponding <b>Bit Length</b> . You can select one (or) more than one <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> from the drop-down.   | The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Bit Length - Key Type(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.  |
| <b>*ECDSA curve</b>   | When <b>Key Type</b> is selected as EC, <b>ECDSA curve</b> corresponding to selected <b>Key Type</b> is listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>ECDSA curve</b> from the drop-down for a certificate. | The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>ECDSA curve(s)</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend using P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling. |
| <b>*Hash Function</b>   | Supported <b>Hash Function(s)</b> are listed. You can select one (or) more than one <b>Hash Function(s)</b> from the drop-down.  | The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected <b>Hash Function(s)</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.   |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |  |   |

10. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

**Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table**

| Name                     | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>Common Name</b>       | <p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Common Name</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).</p> </div> |
| <b>Organization</b>      | <p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization</b> will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The organization</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  |
| <b>Organization Unit</b> | <p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Subject Organization Unit</b> will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. <b>Organization Unit</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Locality</b>          | <p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Locality</b> will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The locality</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>State</b>             | <p>You can provide state.</p>   |

| Name   | Description   |
|--|---|
|  | <p>The discovered certificate's <b>State</b> will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>The state</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Country code</b>  | <p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>Country code</b> will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Country code</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Email</b>   | <p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's <b>mail address</b> will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. <b>Mail address</b> is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>   |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b>  | <p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p> </div> |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;"> <p> <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.</p> </div> |   |

- Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **Trustwave** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.

12. Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
13. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

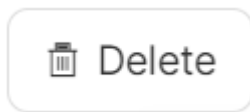
## Deleting a Policy

To delete a policy,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.

2. Select a policy from the list.



3. Click .
4. On the **Confirmation** popup, click **Yes**.

## Certificate Authority (CA) Integration

Service Mesh can be integrated with your Enterprise Internal PKI only for signing application workloads with mTLS certificates.

AppViewX supports integrating with EJBCA and Microsoft CA for signing the mTLS service mesh workloads.

- [Custom CA](#)
- [AppViewX CA](#)
- [AppViewX PKIaaS CA](#)
- [Amazon and Amazon Private CA](#)
- [Segito CA](#)
- [DigiCert CA](#)
- [DigiCert MPKI](#)

- EJBCA CA
- Entrust
- Entrust MPKI
- GlobalSign MSSL CA
- GlobalSign Atlas CA
- GoDaddy CA
- Google CA
- Certificate Authority Service CA
- HashiCorp Vault CA
- InCommon CA
- Let's Encrypt CA
- Microsoft Enterprise CA
- Nexus
- OpenTrust CA
- Symantec CA
- Trustwave CA

## Custom CA

- [Before you Begin](#)
- [Configuring Custom CA](#)

## Before you Begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring Custom CA account in AppViewX:




- A logo to use it for the custom CA.
- An optional CA certificate and key to be used as a root certificate.

## Configuring Custom CA

To configure the custom CA:


1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

**General Information - Field and Description Table**

| Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
| <b>*Custom CA Name</b>  | A unique name to identify the CA name.<br> <b>Note:</b> No special characters allowed.   |
| <b>*Upload Custom CA Logo</b>   | Upload a logo for the custom CA. This logo will appear in the product representing the custom CA.   |
| <b>Custom CA Certificate</b>  | Upload a certificate for the custom CA. This certificate will become the root certificate.<br> <b>Note:</b> The <code>&lt;.pfx&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;.p12&gt;</code> are certificate types are supported. |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |


3. Once the logo and certificate are uploaded, the entered CA will appear in the CA list with the logo presented.
4. Once the logo is added, users can click **Configure Now** to input the CA details.

5. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:


| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
| <b>*Name</b>  | Client authentication certificate for API communication.                   |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b>  | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen. |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |  |

6. Update the following details in the **ROOT CSR parameters** section as described in the table:

**Root CSR - Field and Description Table**


| Name                     | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>Common Name</b>       | The common name of the root certificate. <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com.</li> <li>Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.)</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Algorithm</b>         | Type of the root certificate.   |
| <b>Hash Function</b>     | The hash function for the root certificate.   |
| <b>Organization Unit</b> | Name of the Organisation unit.  |
| <b>Key Length</b>        | Key length for the root certificate.  |
| <b>Organization</b>      | Organization attribute for the root certificate.  |
| <b>Locality</b>          | Locality attribute for the root certificate.  |
| <b>State or Province</b> | State attribute for the root certificate.   |
| <b>Country</b>           | Country attribute for the root certificate.   |

| Name                 | Description                             |
|----------------------|---|
| <b>Email Address</b> | Email address for the root certificate. |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

7. Update the following details in the **Root Validity** section as described in the table.

| Name               | Description                             |
|--------------------|---|
| <b>*Start Date</b> | Start date of the certificate issuance. |
| <b>*End Date</b>   | End date of the certificate issuance.   |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

8. Click **Save**.

Once the setting is saved, the user will be directed to the root certificate submission holistic view.

9. Users can submit and fetch the root certificate.

10. On the CA setting page user can see the status of the created setting.

## AppViewX CA

- [Configuring AppViewX CA](#)
- [Validating AppViewX CA](#)

## Configuring AppViewX CA

To configure the AppViewX CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Select **AppViewX** from the left-side vendor list.  
The **AppViewX** home page is displayed.
3. Click the **Configure Now** or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.



**Note:** The **Configure Now** option is displayed if you are configuring a CA for the first time.

The **AppViewX** configuration page is displayed.

4. Enter/Select the following details in the **General Information** section:

#### General Information - Field and Description Table


| Name                                     | Description   |
|--|---|
| <b>*CA Account name</b>                  | A unique name to identify the CA setting.<br><b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters. |
| <b>*Purpose/Usage</b>                    | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled.<br>Example: Server, Client  |
| <b>CRL Required</b>                      | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.                 |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b> | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  |

**Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

5. Enter/Select the following **Credentials**-related information:


#### Credentials - Field and Description Table


| Field                   | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Credential type*</b> | From the dropdown list, from the following options, select the credential type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Manual Entry:</b> Manually enter the access and secret key for the customer's AWS account)</li> </ul>  |
| <b>Access key*</b>      | Enter the access key for the customer's AWS account.<br><div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <b>Note:</b> This field is displayed only when <b>Credential</b> type is set to <b>Manual Entry</b>.         </div> |
| <b>Secret key*</b>      | Enter the secret key for the customer's AWS account.   |

| Field | Description   |
|-------|---|
|       |  <b>Note:</b> This field is displayed only when <b>Credential</b> type is set to <b>Manual Entry</b> . |


6. Update the following details in the **CSR Parameters** section as described in the table:

#### CSR Parameters - Field and Description Table

| Name                     | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <b>Common Name</b>       | The common name of the root certificate.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com.</li> <li>• Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.)</li> </ul> |
| <b>Issuer Name</b>       | Name of the certificate issuer.  |
| <b>Algorithm</b>         | Type of the root certificate.  |
| <b>Hash Function</b>     | The hash function for the root certificate.  |
| <b>Organization Unit</b> | Name of the Organisation unit.   |
| <b>Key Length</b>        | Key length for the root certificate.   |
| <b>Organization</b>      | Organization attribute for the root certificate.   |
| <b>Locality</b>          | Locality attribute for the root certificate.   |
| <b>State or Province</b> | State attribute for the root certificate.  |
| <b>Country</b>           | Country attribute for the root certificate.  |
| <b>Email Address</b>     | Email address for the root certificate.  |

| Name  | Description |
|---|-------------|
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |             |

7. Update the following details in the **Validity** section as described in the table.

| Name  | Description                             |
|---|---|
| <b>*Start Date</b>  | Start date of the certificate issuance. |
| <b>*End Date</b>  | End date of the certificate issuance.   |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

8. Click **Save**.

Once the setting is saved, the user will be directed to the root certificate submission holistic view.

9. Users can submit and fetch the root certificate.

10. On the CA setting page, user can see the status of the created setting.

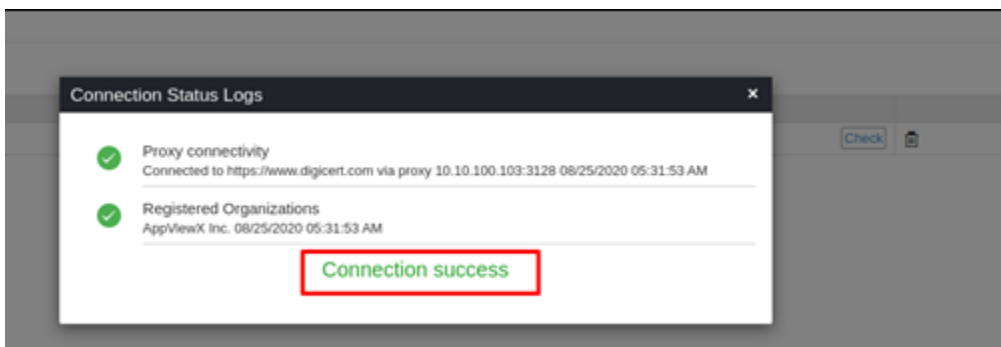
## Validating AppViewX CA

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**

2. Select the **AppViewX** in the left side vendor list.

3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



## AppViewX PKIaaS CA

- [Configuring AppViewX PKIaaS CA](#)
- [Validating AppViewX PKIaaS CA](#)

## Configuring AppViewX PKIaaS CA

To configure the AppViewX PKIaaS CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **AppViewX PKIaaS** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.

**General Information - Field and Description Table**

| Name                  | Description   | Validation   |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| <b>*Name</b>          | A unique name to identify the CA setting  | No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters. |
| <b>*Purpose/Usage</b> | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, server and clients   | NA   |
| <b>Proxy Required</b> | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication. | NA   |
| <b>Data Center</b>    | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  | NA   |




**Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.

CA Configuration Section - Field and Description Table

| Options                 | Description                               |
|-------------------------|---|
| * <b>Region</b>         | Region of the certificate.                |
| * <b>Configure With</b> | The method of certificate type to upload. |
| * <b>Upload JSON</b>    | Option to upload the certificate file.    |
| * <b>Email Address</b>  | Email address of the user.                |
| * <b>Project Id</b>     | ID of the project.                        |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

6. Select **Fetch Procedures**.



**Note:** The procedures available in the AppViewX PKIaaS CA account will be fetched and listed for the specific user.

7. To map the fetched procedures, click on one or many and click the **Actions** dropdown:

- a. **CASE 1** - If the user selects Server only in Purpose and Usage, then the fetched procedure by default will be of server/client both. The Action dropdown will only have - **Map as Server**. and **MAP as Default**
- b. **CASE 2** - If the user selects Client only in Purpose and Usage, then the fetched procedure by default will be of server/client both. The Action dropdown will only have - **Map as Client**. and **MAP as Default**
- c. **CASE 3** - If the user selects Server and Client both in Purpose and Usage, then the fetched procedure by default will be of server/client both. The Action dropdown will have both the actions **Map as Client** , **Map as Server**, and **MAP as Default**

8. Click **Save**.

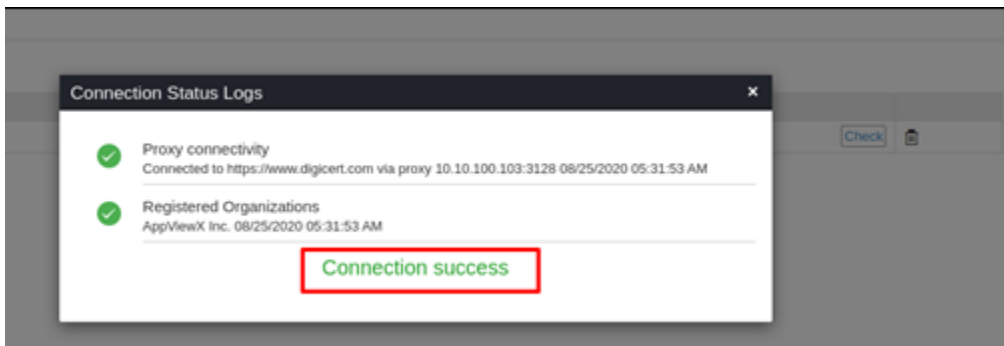
## Validating AppViewX PKIaaS CA

Once the AppViewX PKIaaS settings are added, the validation must be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and AppViewX PKIaaS is configured properly.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **AppViewX PKIaaS** in the left side vendor list.

3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



## Amazon and Amazon Private CA

- [Before you Begin](#)
- [Configuring Amazon CA](#)
- [Configuring Amazon Private CA](#)
- [Validating Amazon](#)

### Before you Begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring Amazon CA or Amazon Private CA account in AppViewX

- An Amazon account for a user having necessary access for enrolling the certificates and other CLM operations.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure the proxy. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>
- Policy JSON for AWS Ec2 Instance Certificate Management.
- Prerequisite for Amazon CA:

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ssm:SendCommand",
        "ssm:DescribeDocument",
        "ec2:DescribeInstances",
        "ec2:DescribeRegions",
        "s3:ListBucket",
        "ssm:CreateDocument",
        "ssm:GetCommandInvocation",
        "s3:GetObject",
        "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
        "ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation",
        "ssm:GetDocument",
        "s3>DeleteObject",
        "s3:GetBucketLocation"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}

```

Policy JSON for Certificate Management in AWS Classic and Application LoadBalancers:

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "iam:GetServerCertificate",
        "elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancers",
        "elasticloadbalancing:ModifyListener",
        "elasticloadbalancing:DescribeListeners",

```

```

"acm:GetCertificate",
"ec2:DescribeRegions",
"elasticloadbalancing:DescribeTargetHealth",
"acm:ImportCertificate",
"elasticloadbalancing:SetLoadBalancerListenerSSLCertificate",
"iam:UploadServerCertificate"
],
"Resource": "*"
}
]
}

```

Policy JSON for Certificate Management in AWS Cloudfront:

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ec2:DescribeRegions",
        "cloudfront:ListDistributions",
        "cloudfront:UpdateDistribution",
        "cloudfront:GetDistributionConfig"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}

```

Policy JSON for IAM Certificate Management:

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "iam:GetServerCertificate",

```

```

"iam:UpdateServerCertificate",
"iam:ListServerCertificates",
"ec2:DescribeRegions",
"iam:UploadServerCertificate"
],
"Resource": "*"
}
]
}

```

Policy JSON for ACM Certificate Management:

```

{
"Version": "2012-10-17",
"Statement": [
{
"Sid": "VisualEditor0",
"Effect": "Allow",
"Action": [
"acm:DescribeCertificate",
"acm:RequestCertificate",
"acm:GetCertificate",
"ec2:DescribeRegions",
"acm:ListCertificates",
"acm:ImportCertificate"
],
"Resource": "*"
}
]
}

```

Prerequisite for Amazon Private CA.

Policies and Permissions required for AWS IAM User:

```

{
"Version": "2012-10-17",
"Statement": [
{
"Sid": "VisualEditor0",
"Effect": "Allow",
"Action": [

```

```

"s3:PutObject",
"s3:GetObjectAcl",
"s3:GetObject",
"s3:PutObjectAcl"
],
"Resource": [
"arn:aws:s3:::<bucketname>",
"arn:aws:s3:::<bucketname>/*"
]
},
{
"Sid": "VisualEditor1",
"Effect": "Allow",
"Action": [
"acm-pca:GetCertificate",
"ec2:DescribeRegions",
"acm-pca:GetCertificateAuthorityCertificate",
"acm-pca:RevokeCertificate",
"acm:RenewCertificate",
"acm-pca:ListCertificateAuthorities",
"acm-pca:DescribeCertificateAuthorityAuditReport",
"acm-pca:CreateCertificateAuthorityAuditReport",
"s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
"acm:DescribeCertificate",
"acm-pca:IssueCertificate",
"acm:RequestCertificate",
"acm:GetCertificate",
"acm:ListCertificates",
"acm-pca:DescribeCertificateAuthority"
],
"Resource": "*"
}
]
AWS Simple Storage Service (S3) Bucket Policy for parsing Audit log:
{
"Version": "2012-10-17",
"Statement": [

```

```

{
  "Effect": "Allow",
  "Principal": {
    "Service": "acm-pca.amazonaws.com"
  },
  "Action": [
    "s3:PutObject",
    "s3:PutObjectAcl",
    "s3:GetBucketAcl",
    "s3:GetBucketLocation"
  ],
  "Resource": [
    "arn:aws:s3:::bucket_name/*",
    "arn:aws:s3:::bucket_name"
  ]
}

```

## Configuring Amazon CA

To configure the Amazon CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Select **Amazon** from the left-side vendor list.  
The **Amazon** home page is displayed.
3. To configure Amazon CA, click the **ACM CA** tab from the home page.
4. Click the **Configure Now** or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.



**Note:** The **Configure Now** option is displayed if you are configuring a CA for the first time.

The **Amazon** configuration page is displayed.

5. Enter/Select the following details in the **General Information** section:



General Information - Field and Description Table

| Field                                      | Description   |
|--|---|
| * <b>Account Type</b>                      | From the dropdown list, select one of the following account types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Standalone</b> (Traditional access key- and secret key-based communication)</li> <li>• <b>Cross or Federated</b> (Authentication using assume role)</li> </ul> |
| * <b>Account Name</b>                      | Unique name for the certificate authority (CA) account represented during certificate enrollment and policy creation  |
| * <b>Account Number</b>                    | Valid AWS account number  |
| <b>Account Description</b>                 | Additional information related to the CA account being configured   |
| * <b>Purpose/Usage</b>                     | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. The available options are, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Server</li> <li>• Client.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>Proxy Required</b>                      | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.   |
| * <b>Default Region</b>                    | Default region for API communication  |
| * <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b> | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  |

6. Enter/Select the following **Credentials**-related information:



Credentials - Field and Description Table

| Field                   | Description   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Credential type*</b> | From the dropdown list, from the following options, select the credential type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Manual Entry</b>: Manually enter the access and secret key for the customer's AWS account)</li> </ul> |



| Field              | Description  |
|--------------------|--|
| <b>Access key*</b> | <p>Enter the access key for the customer's AWS account.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> This field is displayed only when <b>Credential</b> type is set to <b>Manual Entry</b>.                 </div> |
| <b>Secret key*</b> | <p>Enter the secret key for the customer's AWS account.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> This field is displayed only when <b>Credential</b> type is set to <b>Manual Entry</b>.                 </div> |

7. Enter/Select the following details in the **Discover resources** section:

**Discover Resources - Field and Description Table**

| Field                                   | Description   |       |             |                          |   |                         |  |
|---|---|-------|-------------|--------------------------|---|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Role ARN for Resource Discovery*</b> | <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> This field is displayed only when <b>Account Type</b> is <b>Cross or Federated</b>.                 </div> <p>To let the master account assume role for the child account (get temporary privileges to discover resources from the child account), configure the role ARN for resource discovery:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click .</li> <li>b. Enter the following details:</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; margin-top: 10px;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><b>Role Session name</b></td> <td> <p><b>Role Session name</b> is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the <b>Role Session name</b> to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Duration Seconds</b></td> <td>Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Field | Description | <b>Role Session name</b> | <p><b>Role Session name</b> is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the <b>Role Session name</b> to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.</p> | <b>Duration Seconds</b> | Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid. |
| Field                                   | Description   |       |             |                          |   |                         |  |
| <b>Role Session name</b>                | <p><b>Role Session name</b> is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the <b>Role Session name</b> to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.</p>   |       |             |                          |   |                         |  |
| <b>Duration Seconds</b>                 | Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid.  |       |             |                          |   |                         |  |

| Field                  | Description  |   |
|------------------------|--|---|
|                        | Field  | Description   |
|                        |  | Acceptable durations for IAM user sessions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Minimum:</b> 900 seconds (15 minutes)</li> <li>• <b>Maximum:</b> 129,600 seconds (36 hours)</li> </ul> <b>Default:</b> 3600 seconds (1 hour)  |
|                        | <b>External Id</b>   | <b>External Id</b> is a unique identifier that might be required when you assume a role in another account.   |
|                        | <b>Source Identity</b>   | The source identity is specified by the principal that is calling the <b>AssumeRole</b> operation.  |
|                        | <b>Session Tags</b>  | <b>Session Tags</b> are key-value pairs that you pass when you assume an IAM role or federate a user in AWS STS. <p>To create a session tag:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. In the <b>Enter Key</b> field, enter a key for the key-value pair.</li> <li>ii. In the <b>Enter Value</b> field, enter a value for the key-value pair.</li> <li>iii. Click <b>Add</b>.</li> </ol> The added key-value pair is shown in the table below the fields. |
| <b>Service Region*</b> | To select a service region: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. To fetch the service regions for the account information provided, click <b>Fetch Region</b>.<br/>The retrieved service regions are populated in the <b>Select the Region(s)</b> dropdown list.</li> <li>b. From the <b>Select the Region(s)</b> dropdown list, select the required service region.</li> </ol> |   |

| Field                             | Description   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| <b>Discover Certificate</b>       | To enable instant certificate discovery at the time of device addition, select this checkbox.   |
| <b>Cert Sync*</b>                 | <p>Select from one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Managed:</b> AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account and discover certificates. These certificates will be added to the inventory. Users with the relevant permissions can then perform the required certificate-related actions.</li> <li>• <b>Monitored:</b> AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account and discover certificates. These certificates will be added to the inventory where the users will be allowed to only view the certificates.</li> <li>• <b>Ignored:</b> AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account but certificate discovery will be disabled.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Auto Sync</b>                  | <p>To enable/disable automatic schedule-based synchronization:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <b>Auto Sync</b>, select the <b>Yes</b> checkbox.</li> <li>For <b>Schedule based discovery</b>, use the two dropdown lists to select a duration. For example, to schedule the auto sync after every 2 days, from the first dropdown list, select <b>2</b> and from the second dropdown list, select <b>Days</b>.</li> </ol> <p>By default, the auto sync is set to <b>1 Hours</b>.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Schedule based discovery</b> dropdown lists are displayed only when <b>Auto Sync</b> is enabled. </div> |
| <b>Route53 Zone Auto Approval</b> | <p>To support DNS validation as an automatic process, enable this toggle.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #FFD700; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Important:</b> If Route53 has been configured for any of the older Amazon Public CAs, ensure that, after migration, the zones are manually updated. </div>  |

## Configuring Amazon Private CA


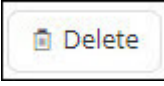

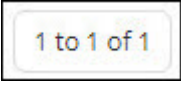
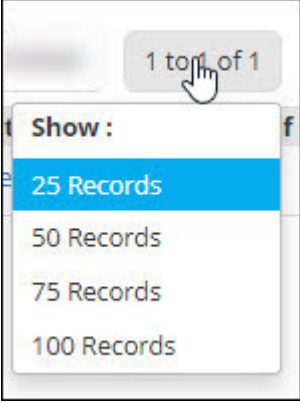

To configure the Amazon Private CA:



1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select **Amazon** from the left-side vendor list.  
The **Amazon** home page is displayed.
3. To configure Amazon CA, click the **AWS Private CA** tab from the home page.


The **Amazon** home page is updated to display the inventory grid as shown in the image. In the inventory grid for the Amazon Private CA, master and child account details are logged as separate entries, instead of having just one master entry.

Fields in the inventory grid are explained in the table below:

**AWS Private CA - Screen Description Table**

| Field   | Description  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>Search</b></p>  | <p>Use the <b>Search</b> field to search for accounts, by entering the value of one of the details listed in the inventory grid.</p>   |
|    | <p>To delete one or more accounts:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the inventory grid, select the checkbox corresponding to the account(s) you want to delete.</li> <li>Click .</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>i</b> <b>Tip:</b> To delete all accounts listed in the inventory grid, select the checkbox in the grid header.</p> </div> |
|  | <p>To set the number of records that should be displayed on one page:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click .</li> <li>From the <b>Show</b> menu displayed, select the required value.</li> </ol>   |
|  | <p>If the inventory grid spans more than one page, use this control to navigate the pages, one page at a time.</p>   |

| Field                    | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>Account Name</b>      | This is the unique name for the Certificate Authority (CA) account entered at the time of account creation.   |
| <b>Account Number</b>    | AWS account number  |
| <b>Account Type</b>      | <b>Multi account:</b> Indicates that the account is a cross account<br><b>Single account:</b> Indicates that the account is a standalone account  |
| <b>CA Status</b>         | <p>For an account, after all configuration details for Amazon Private CA are entered, you will be required to click the <b>Fetch issuer and save</b> button to sync and discover the issuers and the respective certificates for that account.</p> <p>The <b>CA Status</b> field shows the current status of this sync and discovery process.</p> <p>Possible values for this field are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Completed</li> <li>• In progress</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> An account entry in the grid will be disabled till the <b>CA Status</b> is <b>In progress</b>.         </div> |
| <b>Connection Status</b> | To validate if connection has been established with the CA, click <b>Check</b> . If a connection has been established, this field is updated to display <b>Success</b> or <b>Failure</b> .  |
| <b>No. of Issuers</b>    | <p>This field displays the number of issuers associated with the account.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> For a master account, this field will show the number of issuers associated with only the master account. The value does not include the number of issuers associated with the child account.         </div>  |

4. To add an account, click **Configure Now** (if you are creating your first account) or click  from the top-right corner of the screen.

The **Amazon** page is updated to display fields for entering the CA configuration-related information.

5. On this screen, enter the following **Basic Information**:




**Basic Information - Field and Description Table**

| Field                                    | Description  |
|--|--|
| <b>Account type*</b>                     | From the dropdown list, from the following options, select the customer's AWS account type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Standalone:</b> The user account and the resources are available in the same account.</li> <li>• <b>Cross or Federated:</b> Resources are available across multiple accounts and users are given role-based access.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Account name*</b>                     | Enter a unique name for the Certificate Authority (CA) account that will be used during certificate enrollment and policy creation.  |
| <b>Account number*</b>                   | Enter the customer's AWS account number.   |
| <b>Account Description</b>               | Enter any additional details related to the account, if required.  |
| <b>Purpose/ Usage*</b>                   | From the dropdown list, select the purpose of the certificate that can be requested using this account.  |
| <b>Proxy Required</b>                    | To allow all communication to the Certificate Authority (CA) to use the proxy details (provided in general settings; refer the <a href="#">Platform User Guide</a> for more details), select this checkbox.  |
| <b>Default Region*</b>                   | From the dropdown list, select the default region for API communication.   |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA Agent)</b> | From the dropdown list, select the data center that will be used to establish communication with the Certificate Authority (CA)  |

6. Enter the following **Credentials**-related information:



**Credentials - Field and Description Table**

| Field                   | Description   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Credential type*</b> | From the dropdown list, from the following options, select the credential type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Manual Entry:</b> Manually enter the access and secret key for the customer's AWS account)</li> </ul> |




| Field                   | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Access key*</b>      | <p>Enter the access key ID for the customer's AWS account.</p> <p>The access key and the secret access key (entered in the following field) are used together to authenticate requests.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> This field is displayed only when <b>Credential</b> type is set to <b>Manual Entry</b>.         </div>       |
| <b>Secret key*</b>      | <p>Enter the secret access key ID for the customer's AWS account.</p> <p>The access key (entered in the previous field) and the secret access key are used together to authenticate requests.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> This field is displayed only when <b>Credential</b> type is set to <b>Manual Entry</b>.         </div> |
| <b>Credential name*</b> | <p>If the customer's AWS credentials are stored in CyberArk, from the dropdown list, select the CyberArk credential name.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> This field is displayed only when <b>Credential</b> type is set to <b>Credential List - CyberArk</b>.         </div>   |

7. In the **Discover resources** section, enter the following details:

#### Discover Resources - Field and Description Table

| Field                                   | Description   |
|---|---|
| <b>Role ARN for Resource Discovery*</b> | <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> This field is displayed only when <b>Account Type</b> is <b>Cross or Federated</b>.         </div> <p>To let the master account assume role for the child account (get temporary privileges to discover resources from the child account), configure the role ARN for resource discovery:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click .</li> <li>b. Enter the following details:</li> </ol> |

| Field | Description              |  |
|-------|--------------------------|--|
|       | Field                    | Description  |
|       | <b>Role Session name</b> | <p><b>Role Session name</b> is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the <b>Role Session name</b> to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.</p>  |
|       | <b>Duration Seconds</b>  | <p>Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid.</p> <p>Acceptable durations for IAM user sessions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Minimum:</b> 900 seconds (15 minutes)</li> <li>• <b>Maximum:</b> 129,600 seconds (36 hours)</li> </ul> <p><b>Default:</b> 3600 seconds (1 hour)</p> |
|       | <b>External Id</b>       | <p><b>External Id</b> is a unique identifier that might be required when you assume a role in another account.</p>   |
|       | <b>Source Identity</b>   | <p>The source identity is specified by the principal that is calling the <b>AssumeRole</b> operation.</p>  |
|       | <b>Session Tags</b>      | <p><b>Session Tags</b> are key-value pairs that you pass when you assume an IAM role or federate a user in AWS STS.</p> <p>To create a session tag:</p>  |

| Field                                | Description   |       |             |  |  |  |
|--------------------------------------|---|-------|-------------|--|--|--|
|                                      | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td> <p>i. In the <b>Enter Key</b> field, enter a key for the key-value pair.</p> <p>ii. In the <b>Enter Value</b> field, enter a value for the key-value pair.</p> <p>iii. Click <b>Add</b>.</p> <p>The added key-value pair is shown in the table below the fields.</p> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>   | Field | Description |  | <p>i. In the <b>Enter Key</b> field, enter a key for the key-value pair.</p> <p>ii. In the <b>Enter Value</b> field, enter a value for the key-value pair.</p> <p>iii. Click <b>Add</b>.</p> <p>The added key-value pair is shown in the table below the fields.</p> |  |
| Field                                | Description   |       |             |  |  |  |
|                                      | <p>i. In the <b>Enter Key</b> field, enter a key for the key-value pair.</p> <p>ii. In the <b>Enter Value</b> field, enter a value for the key-value pair.</p> <p>iii. Click <b>Add</b>.</p> <p>The added key-value pair is shown in the table below the fields.</p>  |       |             |  |  |  |
| <p><b>Service Region*</b></p>        | <p>Service regions are regions that are supported by the selected service.</p> <p>To select a service region:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To fetch the service regions for the account information provided, click <b>Fetch Region</b>. The retrieved service regions are populated in the <b>Select the Region(s)</b> dropdown list.</li> <li>From the <b>Select the Region(s)</b> dropdown list, select the required service region.</li> </ol>  |       |             |  |  |  |
| <p><b>CA Operation Mode*</b></p>     | <p>From the following options, select one/both operation mode(s) for discovering all the certificates enrolled by the Private Certificate Authority:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ACM Private CA</li> <li>• AWS Certificate Manager (ACM)</li> </ul>  |       |             |  |  |  |
| <p><b>S3 Bucket*</b></p>             | <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> This field is displayed only when the <b>ACM Private CA</b> operation mode is selected.                 </div> <p>Enter the S3 bucket name.</p>   |       |             |  |  |  |
| <p><b>Role ARN for S3 Bucket</b></p> | <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> This field is displayed only when the <b>ACM Private CA</b> operation mode is selected for a <b>Cross or Federated</b> account.                 </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click .</li> </ol> <p>The <b>ARN Advanced Settings</b> action pane is displayed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the <b>ARN Advanced Settings</b> action pane, enter the following details:</li> </ol> |       |             |  |  |  |

| Field | Description               |   |
|-------|---------------------------|---|
|       | Field                     | Description   |
|       | <b>Role Session name*</b> | <p><b>Role Session name</b> is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the <b>Role Session name</b> to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.</p>   |
|       | <b>Duration Seconds</b>   | <p>Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid.</p> <p>Acceptable durations for IAM user sessions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Minimum:</b> 900 seconds (15 minutes)</li> <li>• <b>Maximum:</b> 129,600 seconds (36 hours)</li> </ul> <p><b>Default:</b> 3600 seconds (1 hour)</p>  |
|       | <b>External Id</b>        | <p><b>External Id</b> is a unique identifier that might be required when you assume a role in another account.</p>  |
|       | <b>Source Identity</b>    | <p>The source identity is specified by the principal that is calling the <b>AssumeRole</b> operation.</p>   |
|       | <b>Session Tags</b>       | <p><b>Session Tags</b> are key-value pairs that you pass when you assume an IAM role or federate a user in AWS STS.</p> <p>To create a session tag:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. In the <b>Enter Key</b> field, enter a key for the key-value pair.</li> <li>ii. In the <b>Enter Value</b> field, enter a value for the key-value pair.</li> <li>iii. Click <b>Add</b>.</li> </ol> |

| Field                       | Description   |  |
|-----------------------------|---|--|
|                             | Field   | Description  |
|                             |   | The added key-value pair is shown in the table below the fields. |
| <b>Discover Certificate</b> | To enable instant certificate discovery at the time of device addition, select this checkbox.   |  |
| <b>CA Sync*</b>             | <p>Select from one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Managed:</b> AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account and discover certificates. These certificates will be added to the inventory. Users with the relevant permissions can then perform the required certificate-related actions.</li> <li>• <b>Monitored:</b> AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account and discover certificates. These certificates will be added to the inventory where the users will be allowed to only view the certificates.</li> <li>• <b>Ignored:</b> AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account but certificate discovery will be disabled.</li> </ul> |  |
| <b>Auto Sync</b>            | <p>To enable/disable automatic synchronization, use the <b>Auto Sync</b> key.</p> <p>If <b>Auto Sync</b> is enabled, to set the frequency of the schedule-based sync:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the first dropdown list, select the interval between two schedule-based syncs.</li> <li>From the second dropdown, select a unit for the interval (<b>Hours/Days</b>).</li> </ol> <p>For example, to set the frequency of the schedule-based sync to every 2 hours, from the first dropdown list, select <b>2</b> and from the second dropdown list, select <b>Hours</b>.</p>  |  |

8. Click **Fetch issuer and save**.

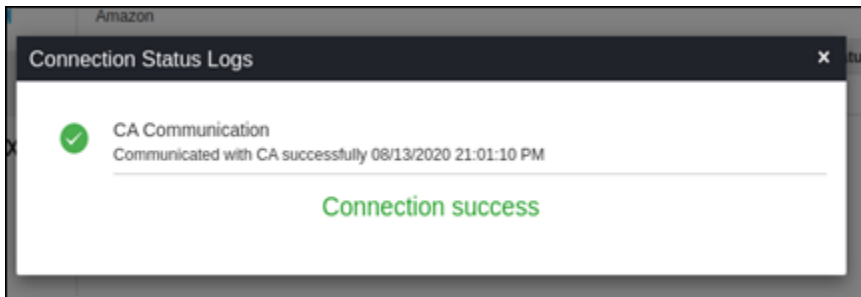
- AppViewX will now discover all the Private CA Certificate Authorities across the selected region(s).
- The inventory grid on the Amazon CA home page will be populated with the properties and details retrieved from this discovery.

## Validating Amazon

Once the Amazon settings are added, you need to validate the connection between AppViewX and Amazon, to make sure that the connection is properly configured.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. On the **Amazon** home page, select **Amazon** or **Amazon Private CA**.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

This action validates the CA communication and the **connection status** is displayed as either **Connection success** or **Failure**.



## Segito CA


- [Configuring Segito](#)
- [Validating Segito Connection](#)

## Configuring Segito

To configure the Segito CA:



1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Segito** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:


**General Information - Field and Description Table**

| Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
| <b>*CA Account name</b>   | A unique name to identify the CA setting.<br><b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters. |
| <b>*Purpose/Usage</b>   | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled.<br>Example: Server, Client  |
| <b>Proxy Required</b>   | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.                 |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b>  | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Segito CA APIs for Certificate Management:

**CA Configuration - Field and Description Table**

| Name                    | Description   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>*Base URL</b>        | This URL will contain just the hostname of the Segito CA instance. For example, <https://www.segito.com><br><br> <b>Note:</b> vendorSpecificSettings.url - invalid URL.  |
| <b>*Credential Type</b> | Select the type of credential as desired from the dropdown list. The available options are, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manual EntryCredential</li> <li>• List - CyberArk.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>*Credential List</b> | Select the required credential from the dropdown list.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This field will be enabled if the Credential Type is selected as Credential List - CyberArk. |

| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
| <b>Account ID</b>   | Account id details of Segito CA Account.   |
| <b>*API Key</b>   | API key specific to the CA account. This API key should have required permission to make API Calls.<br><br>Space is not allowed. |
| <b>Auto Approve</b>   | Enable the <b>Auto Approve</b> option if all CLM requests from AppViewX do not need to be approved from Segito CA Account.       |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |  |

6. Select **Fetch Divisions and Certificate Types**.

The Division and Certificate types available in the Segito CA account will be fetched.

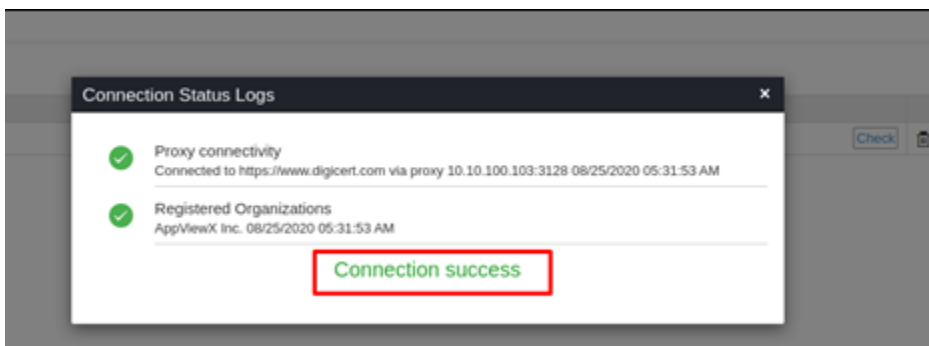
7. Click **Save**.

## Validating Segito Connection

Once the Segito settings are added, the validation must be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Segito is configured properly.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Segito** in the left side vendor list.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



## DigiCert CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring DigiCert](#)
- [Validating DigiCert Connection](#)

### Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring DigiCert CA account in AppViewX:

- A DigiCert CertCentral Account with **Administrator** role Access.
- **API Key** configured in DigiCert with required permissions to make API Requests from AppViewX.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure a proxy. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>


### Configuring DigiCert

To configure the DigiCert CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **DigiCert** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:



**General Information - Field and Description Table**

| Name                    | Description   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>*CA Account name</b> | A unique name to identify the CA setting.<br><b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters. |
| <b>*Purpose/Usage</b>   | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled.<br>Example: Server, Client  |


| Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
| <b>Proxy Required</b>   | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication. |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b>  | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the DigiCert CA APIs for Certificate Management:

#### CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

| Name                    | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>*Base URL</b>        | This URL will contain just the hostname of the DigiCert CA instance. For example, <https://www.digicert.com><br><br> <b>Note:</b> vendorSpecificSettings.url - invalid URL. |
| <b>*Credential Type</b> | Select the type of credential as desired from the dropdown list. The available options are, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manual EntryCredential</li> <li>• List - CyberArk.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>*Credential List</b> | Select the required credential from the dropdown list.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This field will be enabled if the Credential Type is selected as Credential List - CyberArk.    |
| <b>Account ID</b>       | Account id details of DigiCert CA Account, which can be found under account manager details in DigiCert CertCentral Account.   |
| <b>*API Key</b>         | API key specific to the CA account. This API key should have required permission to make API Calls.<br><br>Space is not allowed.   |

| Name                | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>Auto Approve</b> | Enable the <b>Auto Approve</b> option if all CLM requests from AppViewX do not need to be approved from DigiCert CA Account. |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. **Note:** Auto approval checkbox is optional and features work only for **one-step certificate requests** configured in the DigiCert Cert Central Account.

6. Select **Fetch Divisions and Certificate Types**.

The Division and Certificate types available in the DigiCert CA account will be fetched.

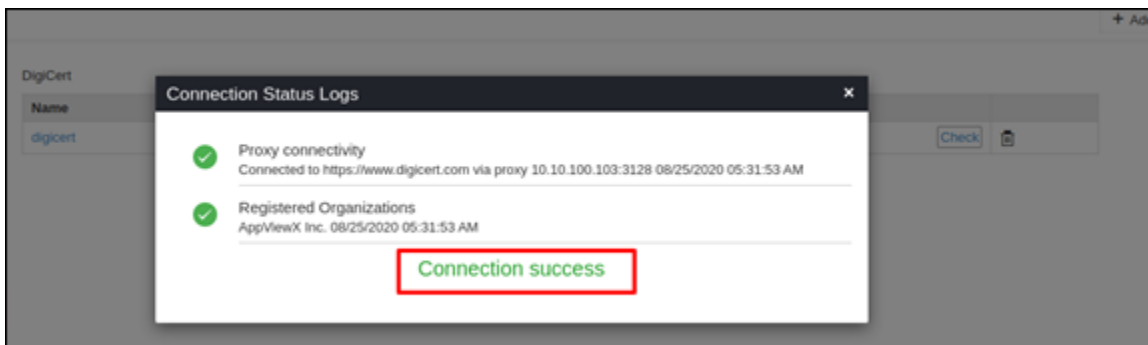
7. Click **Save**.

## Validating DigiCert Connection

Once the DigiCert settings are added, the validation must be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and DigiCert is configured properly.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **DigiCert** in the left side vendor list.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



## DigiCert MPKI

The following are the prerequisites for configuring a DigiCert MPKI CA account in AppViewX:

- A DigiCert MPKI Account with **Administrator** role Access.
- An **API Key** configured in DigiCert MPKI with required permissions to make API Requests from AppViewX.
- The AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure the proxy. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>

- [Configuring DigiCert MPKI CA](#)

- [Validating DigiCert MPKI Connection](#)


## Configuring DigiCert MPKI CA

To configure the DigiCert MPKI CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **DigiCert MPKI** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.


**General Information - Field and Description Table**

| Name                                     | Description   | Validation  |
|--|---|---|
| <b>*CA Account name</b>                  | A unique name to identify the CA setting.   | No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters. |
| <b>*Purpose/ Usage</b>                   | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled.<br>Example: Server, Client  | NA  |
| <b>Proxy Required</b>                    | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication. | NA  |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b> | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  | NA  |

| Name  | Description | Validation |
|---|-------------|------------|
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |             |            |

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the DigiCert CA APIs for Certificate Management.

#### CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

| Name  | Description  | Validation                                  |
|---|--|---|
| <b>*Base URL</b>  | This URL will contain just the hostname of the DigiCert CA instance. For example, <https://www.digicert.com> | vendorSpecificSettings.url<br>- invalid URL |
| <b>*Seat ID</b>   | Enter the unique seat id for discovering certificates.   | NA.   |
| <b>*API Key</b>   | Enter the API key, which is generic across all CAs   | NA.   |
|  <b>Note:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.</li> <li>Auto approval checkbox is optional and features work only for <b>one-step certificate requests</b> configured in the DigiCert Cert Central Account.</li> </ul> |  |   |

6. Select **Fetch Divisions and Certificate Types**.

The Division and Certificate types available in the DigiCert CA account will be fetched and listed for the specific API key user in the table as shown below.

|                          | End Entity Profile Names | Custom Attributes           | Required                            | Default Value        | Modifiable               | Regex Pattern        |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Ecosystem_Code_Signing   | country                     | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
|                          |                          | locality                    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
|                          |                          | common_name                 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
|                          |                          | state                       | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
|                          |                          | postal_code                 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Ecosystem_Client         | common_name                 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
|                          |                          | otherNameUPN                | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
|                          |                          | san_ipAddress               | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
|                          |                          | mail_email                  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
|                          |                          | directory_name              | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Ecosystem_Server         | common_name                 | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
|                          |                          | cert_org_unit               | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
|                          |                          | custom_encode_dnsName       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
|                          |                          | custom_encode_dnsName_multi | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
|                          |                          | san_ipAddress               | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |

7. Click **Save**.

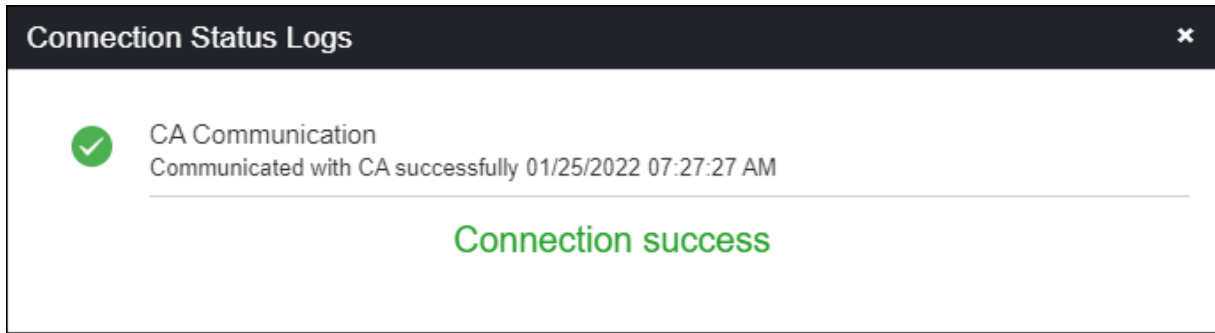


**Note:** The pop-up message is displayed as <CA\_name> Settings Added.

## Validating DigiCert MPKI Connection

Once the DigiCert MPKI settings are added, the validation must be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and DigiCert MPKI is configured properly.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **DigiCert** in the left side vendor list.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.



The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.

## EJBCA CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring EJBCA](#)
- [Validating EJBCA](#)

### Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring EJBCA account in AppViewX:

- An EJBCA client certificate for a user having the necessary access for enrolling the certificates and other CLM operations.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.


### Configuring EJBCA

To configure the EJBCA CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **EJBCA** in the left side vendor list.


4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:



**General Information - Field and Description Table**

| Options   | Description   |
|---|---|
| <b>*CA Account name</b>   | A unique name to identify the CA setting.<br><b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters. |
| <b>*Purpose/ Usage</b>  | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. Example: Server, Client.  |
| <b>Proxy Required</b>   | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.                 |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b>  | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the APIs for Certificate Management.

**CA Configuration - Field and Description Table**

| Options                         | Description  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <b>*Client Authentication</b>   | Client authentication certificate for API communication.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter the valid password once the <b>Authentication Details</b> window is displayed.</li> <li>Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> Must be a valid <code>&lt;.p12&gt;</code> or <code>&lt;.pfx&gt;</code> file. |
| <b>*URL</b>                     | EJBCA URL  |
| <b>*Discover by expiry days</b> | To get all the certificates that are expired and valid for specified days.<br> <b>Note:</b> Must be a number.   |
| <b>End entity profile names</b> | Required end entity profiles for CA setting.   |


| Options   | Description   |
|---|---|
| <b>Custom attributes</b>  | Required custom attributes for the specific end entity profile.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> Validation can be added by the user in the regex box. |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

6. Click **Validate and Fetch**.

The **End entity profiles** available for the CA account will be fetched along with the certificate profile from the **Certificate Authority**.

7. Update the following details in the **Certificate Attributes** section as described in the table:

**Certificate Attributes Section - Field and Description Table**

| Options  | Description   |
|--|---|
| <b>*End Entry Profile Names</b>  | Select the profile that is used in the certificate enrollment from the dropdown list. |
| <b>Custom Attributes</b>   | Select the list attributes configured in CA to enroll certificates.                   |
|  <b>Note:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.</li> <li>Custom attributes should be configured as exactly as it is available in the EJBCA portal.</li> </ul> |   |

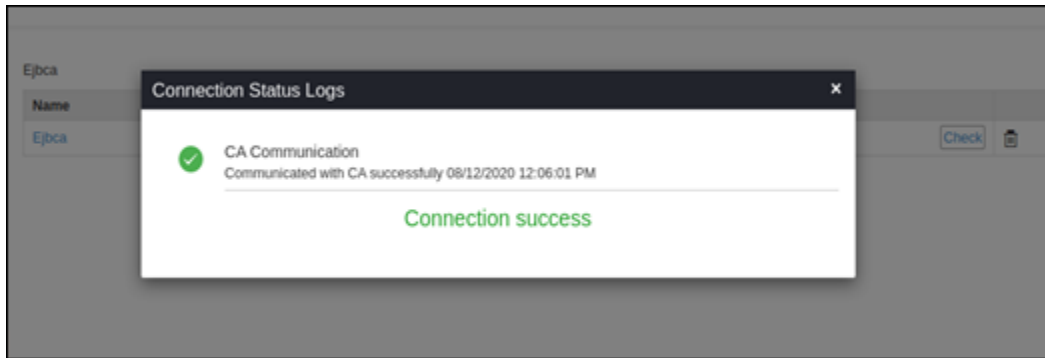
8. Click **Save**.

## Validating EJBCA

Once the EJBCA settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and EJBCA is properly configured.

- Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
- Select the **EJBCA** in the left side vendor list.
- Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



## Entrust

- [Before You Begin](#)
- [Configuring Entrust](#)
- [Validating Entrust CA](#)

## Before You Begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring Entrust CA account in AppViewX:


- An Entrust client authentication certificate and credentials having necessary access for CLM actions.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check [Proxy Setup](#) for the steps to configure the proxy.

## Configuring Entrust

To configure the Entrust CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Entrust** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information - Field and Description Table


| Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
| <b>*CA Account name</b>   | A unique name to identify the CA setting.<br><b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters. |
| <b>*Purpose/Usage</b>   | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled.<br><br>For example: Server and Client   |
| <b>Proxy Required</b>   | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.                 |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b>  | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Entrust CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

| Name                          | Description   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <b>*Client Authentication</b> | The client authentication certificate from Entrust for API communication.<br><b>Note:</b> Must be a valid <.p12> file.<br><br>To generate an CSR within AppViewX refer to Generating a CSR and download the CSR. Further, upload the CSR to the Entrust homepage as described in section - XXXXX. |
| <b>*Base URL</b>              | This URL will contain just the hostname of the Entrust CA instance. The value is https://api.entrust.net/enterprise/v2  |


| Name                | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>User Name</b>    | Enter the API Username to communicate with the CA.                         |
| <b>Password</b>     | Enter the API Password to communicate with the CA.                         |
| <b>Auto Approve</b> | Select the checkbox to avoid queuing of new certificates in the CA portal. |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

6. Update the following details in the **Advanced Settings** section as described in the table.

#### Advanced Settings - Field and Description Table

| Name                             | Description  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <b>Poll after CSR Submission</b> | A check box field when selected will fetch the certificated immediately after CSR Submission on enrollment, renew, and reissue of certificate with the retry count and retry frequency as described below. |
| <b>*Retry Count</b>              | The number of times the polling will take place after CSR submission. Enter a value between 1 and 10.  |
| <b>*Retry Frequency</b>          | The duration of the polling. enter the value between 1 and 30seconds   |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

7. Click **Fetch Custom Attributes**.

The attributes available for the CA account will be fetched from the Certificate Authority along with the CA and profile names.



**Note:** The pop-up message is displayed as **CA and profiles fetched**.

8. Click **Save**.

The created Entrust configuration settings will be added.



**Note:** The pop-up message is displayed as **<CA\_name> Settings Added.**

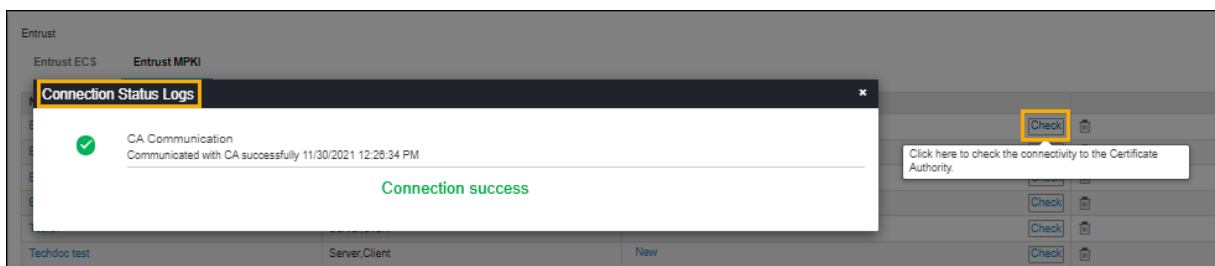
## Validating Entrust CA

Once the Entrust settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Entrust is properly configured.

To validate the Entrust connection,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Entrust** in the left side vendor list.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



## Entrust MPKI

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Entrust MPKI](#)
- [Validating Entrust MPKI Connection](#)

## Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring Entrust MPKI CA account in AppViewX:


- An Entrust client authentication certificate and credentials having necessary access for CLM actions.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check [Proxy Setup](#) for the steps to configure the proxy.

## Configuring Entrust MPKI

To configure the Entrust MPKI CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Entrust** in the left side vendor list, and then select the **Entrust MPKI** tab.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:


**General Information - Field and Description Table**

| Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
| <b>*CA Account name</b>   | A unique name to identify the CA setting.<br><b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters. |
| <b>*Purpose/Usage</b>   | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled.<br><br>For example: Server and Client   |
| <b>Proxy Required</b>   | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.                 |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b>  | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Entrust MPKI CA APIs for Certificate Management.

**CA Configuration - Field and Description Table**

| Name                          | Description   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <b>*Client Authentication</b> | Client authentication certificate for API communication.<br><b>Note:</b> Must be a valid <code>&lt;.p12&gt;</code> file.            |
| <b>*Base URL</b>              | This URL will contain just the hostname of the Entrust CA instance. For example, <code>https://api.entrust.net/enterprise/v2</code> |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

6. Click **Fetch CA and Profile Names**.

The attributes available for the CA account will be fetched from the Certificate Authority along with the CA and profile names.



**Note:** The pop-up message is displayed as **CA and profiles fetched**.

7. Click **Save**.

The created Entrust MPKI configuration settings will be added.



**Note:** The pop-up message is displayed as **<CA\_name> Settings Added**.

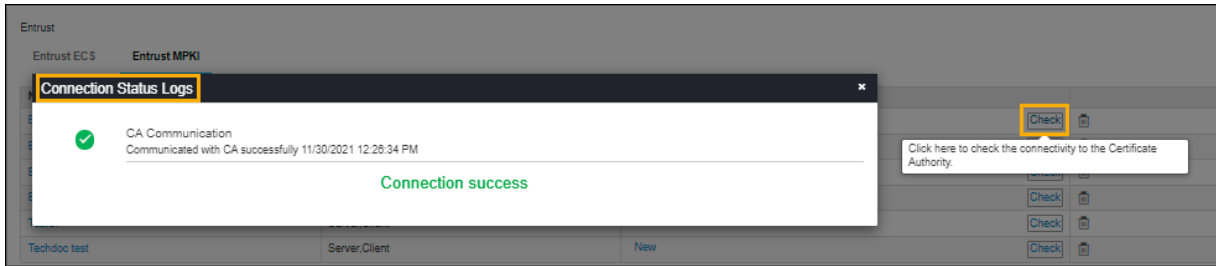
## Validating Entrust MPKI Connection

Once the Entrust settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Entrust is properly configured.

To validate the Entrust MPKI connection,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Entrust MPKI** in the left side vendor list.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



## GlobalSign MSSL CA

- [Configuring GlobalSign MSSL CA](#)
- [Validating GlobalSign MSSL](#)
- [Limitations](#)

## Configuring GlobalSign MSSL CA


To configure the GlobalSign MSSL CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **GlobalSign** in the left side vendor list, and then click the **GlobalSign MSSL** tab.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.

### General Information - Field and Description Table

| Name             | Description   | Validation   |
|------------------|---|--|
| *CA Account name | A unique name to identify the CA setting  | No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters. |
| *Purpose/ Usage  | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, server and clients | NA   |


| Name                              | Description   | Validation |
|-----------------------------------|---|------------|
| Proxy Required                    | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication. | NA         |
| Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent) | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  | NA         |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.:

#### CA Configuration Section - Field and Description Table

| Options    | Description  |
|------------|--|
| *SSL URL   | Base URL of the SSL API                                    |
| *User Name | Provide a username of the GCC to communicate with the CA.  |
| *Password  | Provide a password for the GCC to communicate with the CA. |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

6. Once all the details are configured, click **Save**.

7. In GlobalSign MSSSL, we can now fetch profiles and domains by clicking on the **Fetch Profiles and Domain** button.

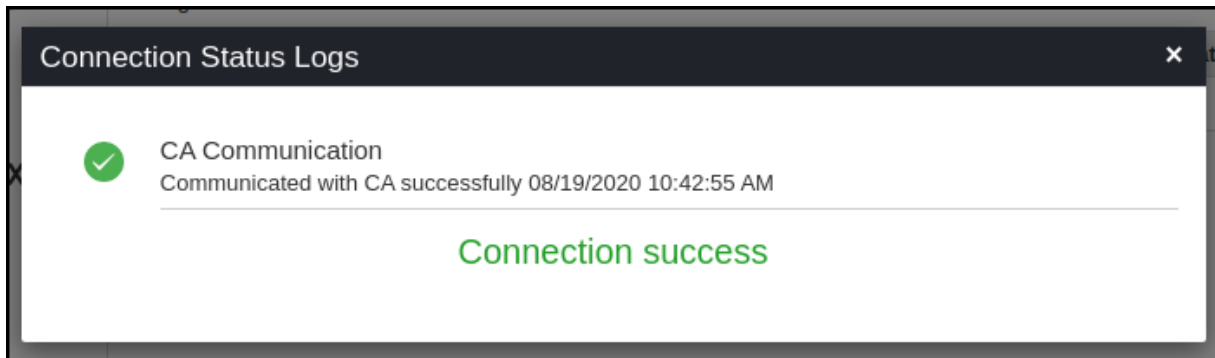


**Note:** The supported CSR key types are RSA 2048-8192, ECC P-256, ECC P-384 .

## Validating GlobalSign MSSSL

Once the GlobalSign settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and GlobalSign is properly configured.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **GlobalSign** in the left side vendor list, and then click the **GlobalSign MSSL** tab.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.
4. CA communication will be validated and the Connection Status will be shown as either Success or Failure.



## Limitations

| Case/<br>Ticket<br>number        | Fix Description  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <b>CA Setting Update</b>         | <p>Users need to click on the <b>Cancel</b> button once the MSSL domain/profile. ID details are fetched from the GlobalSign MSSL account.</p> <p>If the user clicks the Update button, MSSL domain/profile ID details will be removed from the associated policy. The steps to follow to update CA settings are as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. On the GlobalSign MSSL CA settings page, after adding/editing values, click the Update button.</li> <li>2. Navigate back to updated CA settings and click the <b>Fetch Profiles and Domain</b> button.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Cancel</b> button instead of Update to bypass the existing issue.</li> </ol> |
| <b>Default CA policy mapping</b> | <p>The default CA policy is defined with all available values selected and validity data is mapped based on commonly used validity. Hence, it will not have values equivalent to API documents or CA portals. This can be modified or updated in the application accordingly to the default CA policy if changes are required.</p>   |
| <b>Email Address</b>             | <p>The email address provided in the email address field on the enrollment page is not considered as the primary email value during CLM actions, instead, the email address field</p>  |

| Case/<br>Ticket<br>number | Fix Description   |
|---------------------------|---|
|                           | defined in the contact information of the logged-in user will be used. The help info message besides the Email address field on enroll/edit page is as – “If the user email address is configured, that will be used for GlobalSign CA approval actions. If the user email is not configured, then the email address provided in this field will be used” - the second part is not valid anymore. |

## GlobalSign Atlas CA

- [Configuring GlobalSign Atlas](#)
- [Validating GlobalSignAtlas](#)

## Configuring GlobalSign Atlas

### Before you Begin


The prerequisites for configuring GlobalSign Atlas CA are

- Login and password to access AppViewX.
- Base URL, API Key, API Secret Key.
- A client certificate provided by the GlobalSign Atlas team.

To configure the GlobalSign Atlas CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **GlobalSign** in the left side vendor list, and then select the **GlobalSign Atlas** tab.
4. If creating a CA for the first time click **Configure Now** or click **+ Add** button on the top right.
5. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.

**General Information - Field and Description Table**


| Field Name  | Field Type            | Description   | Validation |
|---|-----------------------|---|------------|
| <b>*API Credential Friendly name</b>  | Text                  | Enter the API Credentials Friendly name (which is the CA Account name that will be used for the CA Policy and Enrollment).                                  |            |
| <b>*Purpose/Usage</b>   | Multiselect- dropdown | Select the purpose of the certificate that can be requested using this account.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Users can select <i>Server</i> , <i>Client</i> or both. |            |
| <b>Proxy Required</b>   | Checkbox              | Select the checkbox if communication to the Certificate Authority (CA) has to use the proxy details provided in the general settings                        |            |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b>  | Dropdown              | Select the data center that will be used to establish the communication with the CA.  |            |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |                       |   |            |

6. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.

**CA Configuration - Field and Description Table**

| Field Name       | Field Type | Description   | Validation |
|------------------|------------|---|------------|
| <b>*Base URL</b> | Text       | Enter the base URL required for constructing the API request.                 |            |
| <b>*API Key</b>  | Text       | Enter the API key which is the unique identifier used to authenticate a user. |            |

| Field Name                    | Field Type  | Description  | Validation  |
|-------------------------------|-------------|--|---|
|                               |             | <b>NOTE:</b> The API Key will be displayed as asterisks (*)  |   |
| <b>*API Secret</b>            | Text        | Enter the API secret to communicate with the CA.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> The API Secret will be displayed as asterisks (*) |   |
| <b>*Client Authentication</b> | File select | Upload the certificate for client authentication in the .p12 or .pfx format only.                                      | The uploaded file format is invalid. Please upload in PKCS12 (.p12 or .pfx) file format only. |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

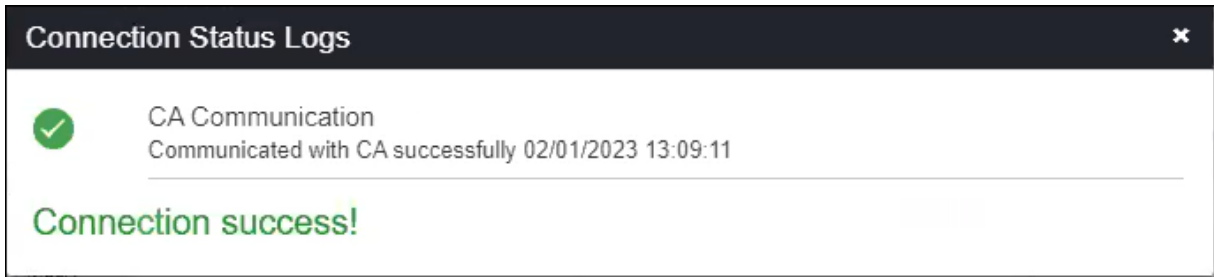
7. Click the **Fetch Validation Policy and Save** button.

A confirmation message will appear “Validation Policy fetched and settings have been updated.” and the CA is created successfully. The connection status for the CA is displayed as New.

## Validating GlobalSignAtlas

Once the GlobalSign Atlas settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and GlobalSign is properly configured.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **GlobalSign** in the left side vendor list, and then select the **GlobalSign Atlas** tab.  
The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.
4. CA communication will be validated and the Connection Status will be shown as either Success or Failure.



## GoDaddy CA

- [Configuring GoDaddy](#)
- [Validating GoDaddy](#)
- [View GoDaddy Product Units](#)


## Configuring GoDaddy

To configure the GoDaddy CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **GoDaddy** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

**General Information - Field and Description Table**



| Name                    | Description   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>*CA Account name</b> | A unique name to identify the CA setting.<br><b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters. |
| <b>*Purpose/Usage</b>   | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled.<br>Example: Server, Client.   |

| Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
| <b>Proxy Required</b>   | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication. |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b>  | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the GoDaddy CA APIs for Certificate Management.

#### CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

| Name                    | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>*Base URL</b>        | This URL will contain the Base URL of the GoDaddy CA API instance.<br>For example: <a href="https://api.godaddy.com">https://api.godaddy.com</a> |
| <b>*Customer Number</b> | Each user will have a unique customer number which is used to obtain the certificates from the GoDaddy CA account.                               |
| <b>*API Key</b>         | API key generated in the GoDaddy portal which is used for GoDaddy API communications.  |
| <b>*API Secret</b>      | API Secret generated in the GoDaddy portal which is used for GoDaddy API communications.   |
| <b>First Name</b>       | First name of the GoDaddy Account user's name as provided in the portal to be used for certificate creation purposes.                            |
| <b>Last Name</b>        | Last name of the GoDaddy Account user's name as provided in the portal to be used for certificate creation purposes.                             |

| Name   | Description   |
|--|---|
| <b>Email Address</b>   | Email Id of the GoDaddy Account user's name as provided in the portal to be used for certificate creation purposes.<br><b>Note:</b> Valid email address.  |
| <b>Phone Number</b>  | Phone number of the GoDaddy Account user as provided in the portal to be used for certificate creation purposes.<br><div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> Phone numbers must contain a minimum of 7 and a maximum of 15 numeric values.           </div> |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.           </div> |   |

6. Click **Save**.

## Validating GoDaddy

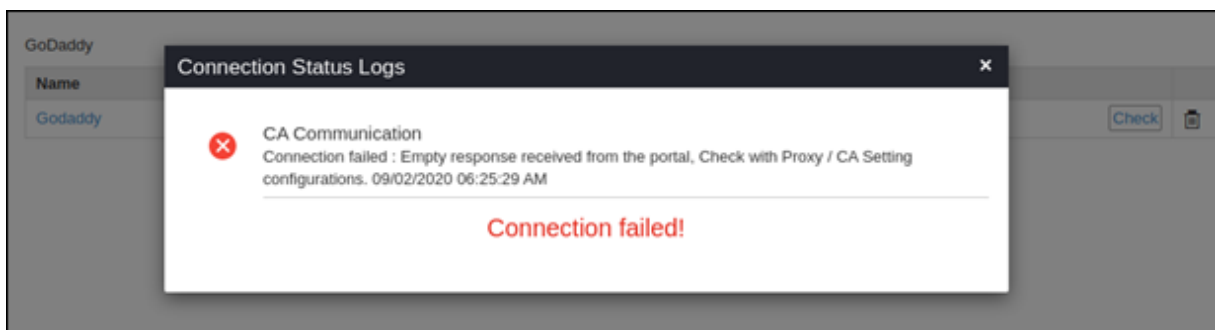
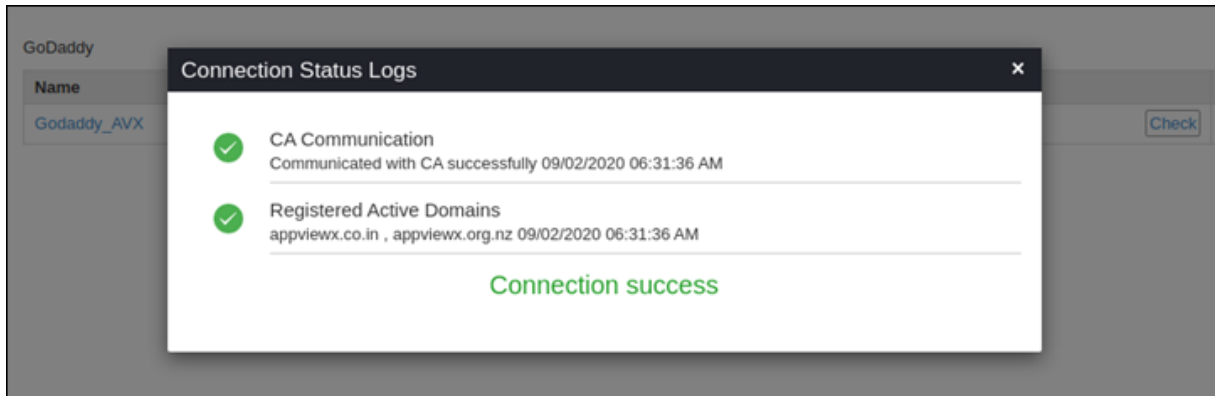
Once the GoDaddy settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and GoDaddy is properly configured. To validate GoDaddy CA,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **GoDaddy** in the left side vendor list

The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.

3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



## View GoDaddy Product Units

Each GoDaddy account will have different types of SSL products and units, below said steps would allow users to know the availability of the products and their remaining units.

To view the GoDaddy product units:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **GoDaddy** in the left side vendor list
3. On the **GoDaddy** page, click **View** to fetch the product types and the units available for the GoDaddy account configured. Once clicked, users can view the available and used product units.

## Google CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Google](#)
- [Validating Google](#)

### Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring a Google CA account in AppViewX:


- A Google client certificate or Google client authentication JSON for a user having necessary access for enrolling the certificates and for other Certificate Lifecycle Management (CLM) operations.
- AppViewX servers should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.
- The URL <https://www.googleapis.com> should be reachable from AppViewX.

### Configuring Google


To configure the Google CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Google** in the left side vendor list.
4. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.  
The Google configuration page is displayed.
5. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

**General Information - Field and Description Table**

| Name             | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| *CA Account name | <p>A unique name to identify the CA setting.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  <b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters.         </div> |


| Name                                 | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| *Purpose/Usage                       | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, Server and Client  |
| Proxy Required                       | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication. |
| Data Center<br>(AppViewX's CA agent) | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

- Configure it either Certificate Upload or JSON Upload. These fields are necessary for invoking the Google CA APIs via Certificate Upload for Certificate Management. Select the Certificate Upload check box,

#### CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

| Options              | Description  |
|----------------------|--|
| *Certificate and Key | Client authentication certificate for API communication. |
| *Email address       | Email address of the user                                |
| *Project Id          | Id of the project  |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

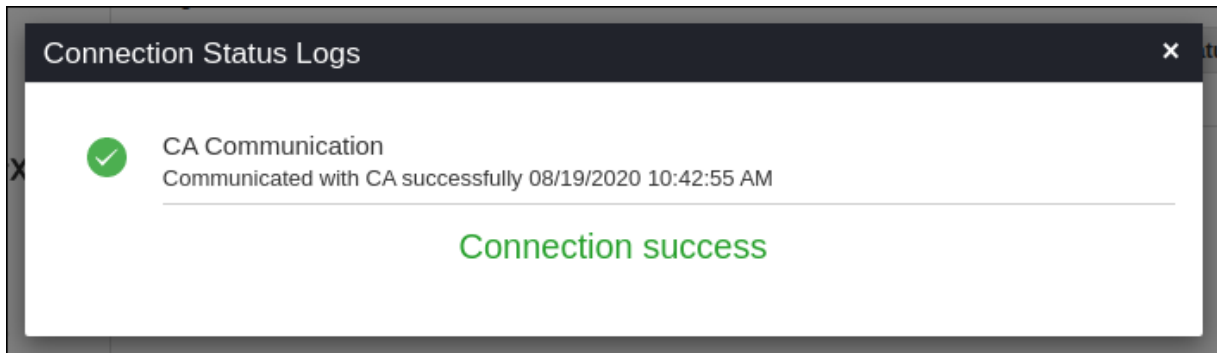
- Select the JSON Upload check box and configure a CA. Click the Upload button to upload the JSON file.
- Click Validate and Fetch. The issuer names available for the CA account will be fetched along with the validity of the issuers from the Certificate Authority.
- Click **Save**.

## Validating Google

Once the Google settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Google is properly configured. To validate the Google CA,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Google** in the left side vendor list  
The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

CA communication is validated and the Connection Status is shown as either Success or Failure.



## Certificate Authority Service CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Certificate Authority Service](#)
- [Validating Certificate Authority Service](#)

### Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring a Google CA account in AppViewX:



- A Google client certificate or Google client authentication JSON for a user having necessary access for enrolling the certificates and for other Certificate Lifecycle Management (CLM) operations.
- AppViewX servers should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.
- The URL <https://www.googleapis.com> should be reachable from AppViewX.

## Configuring Certificate Authority Service

To configure the Certificate Authority Service CA,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.  
The Google configuration page is displayed.
3. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:


### General Information - Field and Description Table

| Name   | Description   |
|--|---|
| *CA Account name   | A unique name to identify the CA setting.<br><br><div style="border: 1px solid #0070c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  <b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters.         </div> |
| *Purpose/Usage   | Certificate Type for which CLM actions are enabled. For example, Server and Client.   |
| Proxy Required   | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.   |
| Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)  | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #0070c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.         </div> |   |

4. Configure it either Certificate Upload or JSON Upload. These fields are necessary for invoking the Google CA APIs via Certificate Upload for Certificate Management. Select the Certificate Upload check box,  
Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.

### CA Configuration Section - Field and Description Table

| Options              | Description  |
|----------------------|--|
| *Certificate and Key | Client authentication certificate for API communication. |
| *Email address       | Email address of the user                                |
| *Project Id          | Id of the project  |

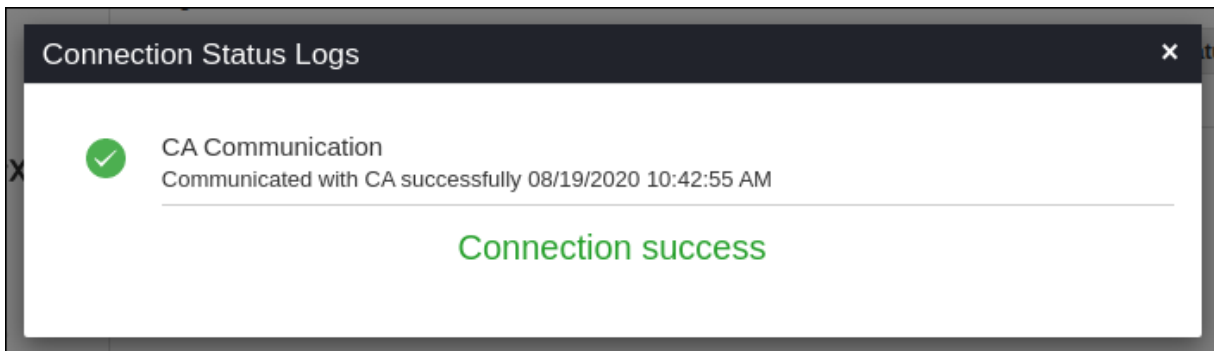
| Options   | Description |
|---|-------------|
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |             |

5. Select the JSON Upload check box and configure a CA. Click the Upload button to upload the JSON file.
6. Click Validate and Fetch. The issuer names available for the CA account will be fetched along with the validity of the issuers from the Certificate Authority.
7. Click **Save**.

## Validating Certificate Authority Service

Once the Google settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Google is properly configured. To validate the Google CA,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Google** in the left side vendor list  
The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.
4. CA communication will be validated and the Connection Status will be shown as either Success or Failure.



## HashiCorp Vault CA

- [Before You Begin](#)
- [Configuring HashiCorp Vault](#)
- [Validating HashiCorp Vault](#)

## Before You Begin

The prerequisites for configuring HashiCorp Vault CA are

- Login and password to access AppViewX.
- Base URL, Role ID, and Secret Key for the APP ROLE method and Base URL, Access Key, Secret Key, and Role Name for the AWS method in the CA Configurations.

## Configuring HashiCorp Vault

### Steps to Configure HashiCorp Vault CA


To configure HashiCorp Vault CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **HashiCorp Vault** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the details in the General Information section as described in the table below:

**General Information - Field and Description Table**

| Field Name              | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>*CA Account name</b> | A unique name to identify the CA setting.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', and '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters |
| <b>*Purpose/Usage</b>   | The dropdown contains checkboxes for the certificate type for which the CLM actions will be enabled.<br><br>The values are:  |

| Field Name                               | Description  |
|--|--|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Server,</li> <li>• Client</li> <li>• Code Signing</li> </ul> <p>One or more values can be selected depending on the type of account users need to create.</p> |
| <b>Proxy Required</b>                    | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.  |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b> | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.   |


 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

5. Update the details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the tables below. These fields are necessary for invoking the HashiCorp CA Secret Engine for Certificate Management. The fields displayed in the CA Configuration section depend on the value selected in the **Method** field. The two auth method values are:

- **APP ROLE** - The APP ROLE auth method allows machines or apps to authenticate with Vault-defined roles. An "AppRole" represents a set of Vault policies and login constraints that must be met to receive a token with those policies. An AppRole can be created for a particular machine, or even a particular user on that machine or a service spread across machines. The credentials required for successful login depend upon the constraints set on the AppRole associated with the credentials.
- **AWS** - The AWS auth method provides an automated mechanism to retrieve a Vault token for IAM principals and AWS EC2 instances. Unlike most Vault auth methods, this method does not require manual first-deploying or provisioning of security-sensitive credentials (tokens, username/password, client certificates, etc), by operators under many circumstances.


#### CA Configuration for App Role - Field and Description Table

| Field Name       | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| <b>*Base URL</b> | The base of URL of the CA account. This is a user input value. |

| Field Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
| <b>*Method</b>  | <b>APP ROLE</b>   |
| <b>*Role ID</b>   | User input value<br><br>RoleID is an identifier that selects the AppRole against which the other credentials are evaluated. When authenticating against this auth method's login endpoint, the RoleID is a required argument at all times. By default, RoleIDs are unique UUIDs, which allow them to serve as secondary secrets to the other credential information.                  |
| <b>*Secret Key</b>  | User input value<br><br>Secret Key (SecretID) is a credential that is required by default for any login and is intended to always be secret. They can be created against an AppRole either via generation of a 128-bit purely random UUID by the role itself or via specific, custom values. Similarly to tokens, Secret keys have properties like usage-limit, TTLs and expirations. |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

#### CA Configuration for AWS - Field and Description Table

| Field Name         | Description  |
|--------------------|--|
| <b>*Base URL</b>   | The base of URL of the CA account. This is a user input value.   |
| <b>*Method</b>     | <b>AWS</b>   |
| <b>*Access Key</b> | User input value<br><br>Access Keys are used to sign the requests that are sent. Access Key and Secret Key are used for programmatic (API) access to AWS services. |
| <b>*Secret Key</b> | User input value   |

| Field Name   | Description  |
|--|--|
|  | Secret Key (SecretID) is a credential that is required by default for any login and is intended to always be secret. Similar to tokens, SecretIDs have properties like usage-limit, TTLs, and expirations.   |
| <b>*Role Name</b>  | User input value<br><br>The basic mechanism of operation (AWS authorization workflow) is per-role. Roles are registered in the method and associated with a specific authentication type that cannot be changed once the role has been created. Roles can also be associated with various optional restrictions, such as the set of allowed policies and max TTLs on the generated tokens. |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |  |

The correct values entered in the fields establish a connection with the HashiCorp vault to be able to fetch the secret engine.

- Click the **Fetch Secret Engine** button.

A list of PKI secret engines is displayed. These will be presented to users in the policy. from where they can select the respective secret engines.

- Click **Save**.

The Account details are displayed in a grid at the bottom of the screen, with options to options to edit, check (connection status), and delete.

## Editing an Account

- Go to **Start > Certificate**, and under Advanced Configuration, click **Create a Certificate Authority**.

The list of Accounts is displayed in the grid.

- Click the account name from the 'Name' column in the grid.

The General Information and CA Configuration sections are displayed with pre-populated values.

- Change any of the editable fields and click the **Fetch Secret Engine** button.
- Click the **Update** button.

## Deleting an Account

1. Go to **Start > Certificate**, and under Advanced Configuration, click **Create a Certificate Authority**.  
The list of Accounts is displayed in the grid.
2. In the last column of the grid with the listed accounts, click the **delete** or bin icon.  
The Delete Confirmation pop-up is displayed.
3. Click **Yes**.

## Validating HashiCorp Vault

To check the connection status of an account,

1. Go to **Start > Certificate**, and under Advanced Configuration, click **Create a Certificate Authority**.  
The list of Accounts are displayed in the grid.
2. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click the **Check** button  
The Success or Failure value is displayed.
3. Update the account details accordingly to get a “success” status.

## InCommon CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring InCommon CA](#)
- [Validating InCommon CA](#)

## Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring InCommon CA account in AppViewX:



- InCommon Certificate Manager credentials having necessary access for enrolling the certificates.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure the **proxy**. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>
- Username and Password as set up in the Certificate Manager tool.
- An OrgID as provided by InCommon Certificate Manager.
- The login URL and URI.

## Configuring InCommon CA

To configure the InCommon CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **InCommon** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:



**General Information - Field and Description Table**

| Name   | Description   |
|--|---|
| <b>*CA Account name</b>  | A unique name to identify the CA setting.<br><br><div style="border: 1px solid #00a0c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  <b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name must not start with special characters.         </div> |
| <b>*Purpose/ Usage</b>   | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, Server, Client.  |
| <b>Proxy Required</b>  | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.   |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b>   | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.         </div> |   |

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the InCommon CA APIs for Certificate Management.

**CA Configuration - Field and Description Table**

| Name             | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| <b>*Base URL</b> | This URL will contain just the hostname of the InCommon CA instance. For example, <a href="https://cert-manager.com/customer/">https://cert-manager.com/customer/</a> |

| Name   | Description  |
|--|--|
|  | <p>&lt;&lt;customer_uri&gt;&gt;/ssl- here base URL is <b>https://cert-manager.com</b>.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name must not start with special characters. </div> |
| * <b>Login URL</b>   | URI specific to the InCommon CA Customer Account. For example, <a href="https://cert-manager.com/customer/&lt;&lt;customer_uri&gt;&gt;/ssl">https://cert-manager.com/customer/&lt;&lt;customer_uri&gt;&gt;/ssl</a> - here URI is <b>customer_uri</b> .   |
| * <b>User Name</b>   | User name for the account created with InCommon CA.  |
| * <b>Password</b>  | Password for the account created with InCommon CA.   |
| * <b>Organization ID</b>   | InCommon supports organization hierarchy. Id of the <b>Organization Unit/Department</b> in which Certificates need to be managed has to be specified here. <b>CLM</b> actions done using this CA account will be specific to this particular organization's id/department.   |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.</li> <li>If the certificates from multiple organization's units/departments need to be managed, then a separate CA has to be configured for each organization unit/department in the InCommon CA setting page.</li> </ul> </div> |  |

6. Select **Fetch Certificate Types**.

The Certificate types available for the CA account will be fetched from the Certificate Authority.

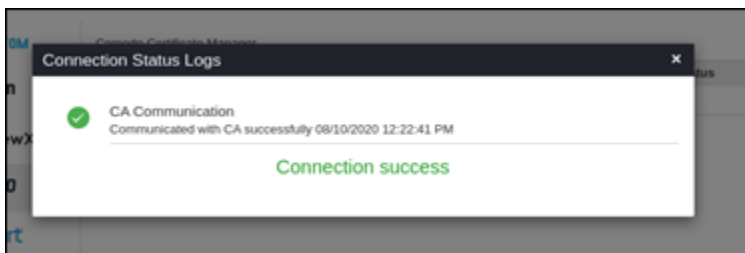
7. Click **Save**.

## Validating InCommon CA

Once the InCommon settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and InCommon is properly configured. To validate the InCommon CA,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **InCommon** in the left side vendor list
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.  
The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



## Let's Encrypt CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Let's Encrypt CA](#)
- [Validating Let's Encrypt](#)

### Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring Let's Encrypt CA account in AppViewX:



- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure proxy. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>
- Any one of the following Let's Encrypt certificate enrolment URL as per requirement :
  1. <https://acme-staging-v02.api.letsencrypt.org> for **staging**.
  2. <https://acme-v02.api.letsencrypt.org> for **production**.

## Configuring Let's Encrypt CA

To configure the Let's Encrypt CA:


1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Let's Encrypt** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

**General Information - Field and Description Table**

| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
| <b>*Name</b>  | <p>A unique name to identify the CA setting.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name must not start with special characters.         </div> |
| <b>*Purpose/Usage</b>   | The certificate types will be managed by these settings. For now, Let's Encrypt is having only one purpose <b>Server</b> .   |
| <b>Proxy Required</b>   | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.  |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b>  | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.   |
| <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.         </div> |  |

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Let's Encrypt CA APIs for Certificate Management.

| Name             | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| <b>*Base URL</b> | Let's Encrypt certificate enrolment URL either staging or production based on the requirement. |

| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
| *Email ID(s)  | Enter email ID(s) in this field to receive notifications from Let's Encrypt. Multiple email ID must be separated by comma (,). |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |  |

6. Click **Save**.

## Validating Let's Encrypt

Once the Let's Encrypt settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Let's Encrypt is properly configured. To validate the Let's Encrypt CA,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **InCommon** in the left side vendor list  
The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created. The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.

## Microsoft Enterprise CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Microsoft Enterprise CA](#)
- [Validating Microsoft Enterprise](#)

### Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring Microsoft Enterprise CA in AppViewX

AppViewX Windows Gateway installer should be installed in a windows machine, running and reachable from AppViewX vendor plugin(s) through the Communication Modes described below.

Communication Mode Table

| Communication mode | Category          | Windows gateway machine  | Microsoft CA  |
|--------------------|-------------------|--|---|
| NATIVE API         | User account type | Service account  | Service account   |
|                    | User permission   |  | Read, Request certificates, Issue and Manage certificates permission at CA level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users<br><br>Enroll permission at Certificate template level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users |
|                    | Services          | RPC service  | RPC service<br><br>certutil.exe command availability  |
|                    | Ports             |  | 135 as the incoming port  |
| POWERSHELL         | User account type | Service account  | Service account.  |
|                    | User permission   |  | Full control permission to C:\Windows\Temp<br><br>Read, Request certificates, Issue and Manage certificates permission at CA level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users  |
|                    | Services          | RPC Service, WinRM Service, WinRM Configuration, Powershell remoting,certutil.exe command availability | RPC Service, WinRM Service, WinRM Configuration, Powershell remoting,certutil.exe command availability.   |
|                    | Ports             |  | 5985  |

**Communication Mode Table (continued)**

| Communication mode | Category          | Windows gateway machine                          | Microsoft CA   |
|--------------------|-------------------|--|--|
| WMI                | User account type | Service account                                  | Service account  |
|                    | User permission   |  | Full control permission to C:\Windows\Temp<br>Read, Request certificates, Issue and Manage certificates permission at CA level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users |
|                    | Services          | WMI service<br>certutil.exe command availability | WMI service<br>certutil.exe command availability   |
|                    | Ports             | NA.  | 135, 445 or 139  |


## Configuring Microsoft Enterprise CA

To configure the Microsoft enterprise CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Microsoft** in the left side vendor list, and then click the **Enterprise** tab.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:


**General Information - Field and Description Table**

| Name                    | Description   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>*CA Account name</b> | A unique name to identify the CA setting.<br><b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters. |
| <b>*Purpose/Usage</b>   | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. Example. Server, Client, Code Signing   |

| Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
| <b>Proxy Required</b>   | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication. |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b>  | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.

**CA Configuration - Field and Description Table**

| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
| <b>*Windows Gateway URL</b>   | Enter the URL where the AppViewX agent is running.   |
| <b>*Windows Gateway Type</b>  | The mode of communication types from Windows Gateway machine to CA machine. Available types are <b>NATIVE API, POWERSHELL, WMI</b> . Refer <b>Communication Mode</b>                       |
| <b>Client Authentication Certificate</b>  | The client certificate used while installing Windows Gateway. Users can use the default client certificate (ClientCertificateGateway.pfx) or the custom certificate given by the Customer. |
| <b>*Credential Type</b>   | Type of credential to be used. Either <b>Manual Entry</b> or <b>Credential List</b> .  |
| <b>Username</b>   | User name of the credentials.  |
| <b>Password</b>   | Password for the username.   |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |  |


6. Click **Fetch CA Names** to retrieve CAs accessible from Windows Gateway installed machine.

Upon successful completion of Fetch CA Names, all reachable CAs listed in **Select CA**.

7. Click on one specific CA and proceed.

### Dynamic Fields for the Select CA Section

| Name                        | Description  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <b>Select CA</b>            | All the reachable CAs are listed here.   |
| <b>*CA Machine Hostname</b> | Host name of the CA Machine will be auto-filled.                                 |
| <b>*CA Name</b>             | Name of the CA chosen which will be auto-filled.                                 |
| <b>CA Manager Approval</b>  | Approves the pending enroll / Renew request submitted from AppViewX Certificate. |
| <b>*Time Zone</b>           | To perform scheduled and Optimized CA discovery, please provide time zone value. |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

## Using Native API

### Using Powershell and WMI

1. Configure the **Template Details**.

Once CA is selected from the **Select CA** list, the **Template** details should have auto-filled.



**Note:** If the desired template is not listed, it might not be published in AD. Users can add it manually through MS Template name and OID fields.

2. In the Template Details section, select/enter the details.
3. Click **Save**.

## Validating Microsoft Enterprise

Once the Microsoft Enterprise settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Microsoft Enterprise is properly configured. To validate the Microsoft enterprise CA,

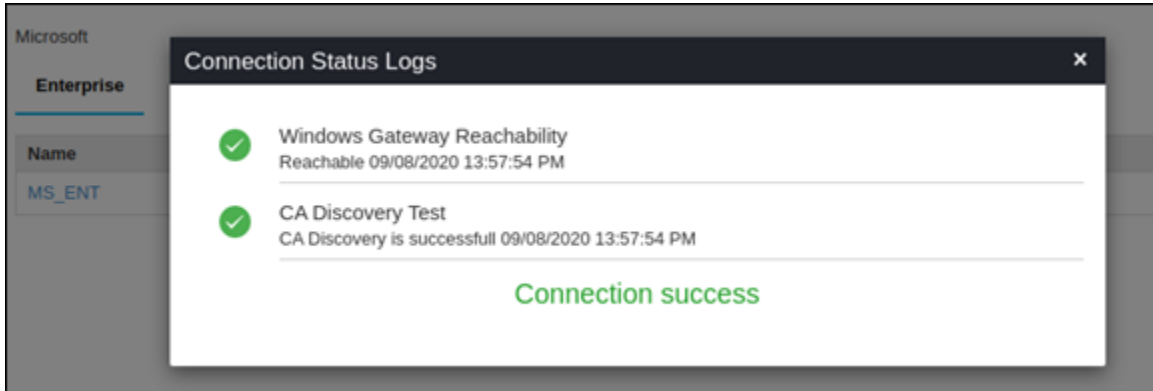
1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **InCommon** in the left side vendor list

The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.

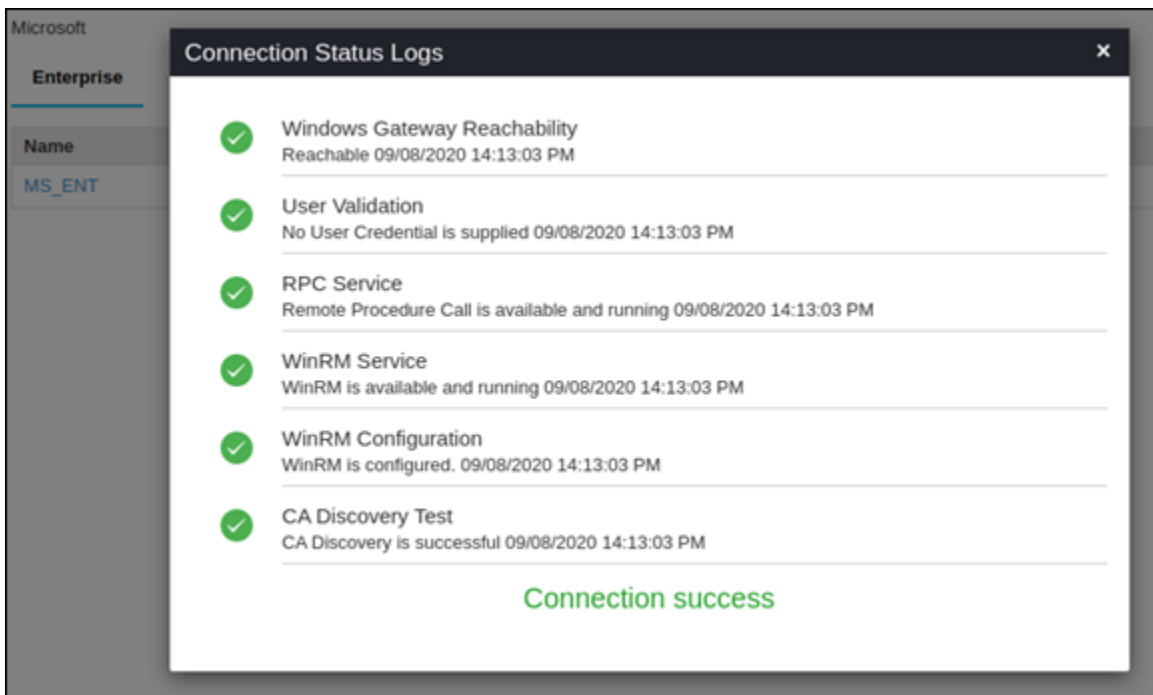
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.

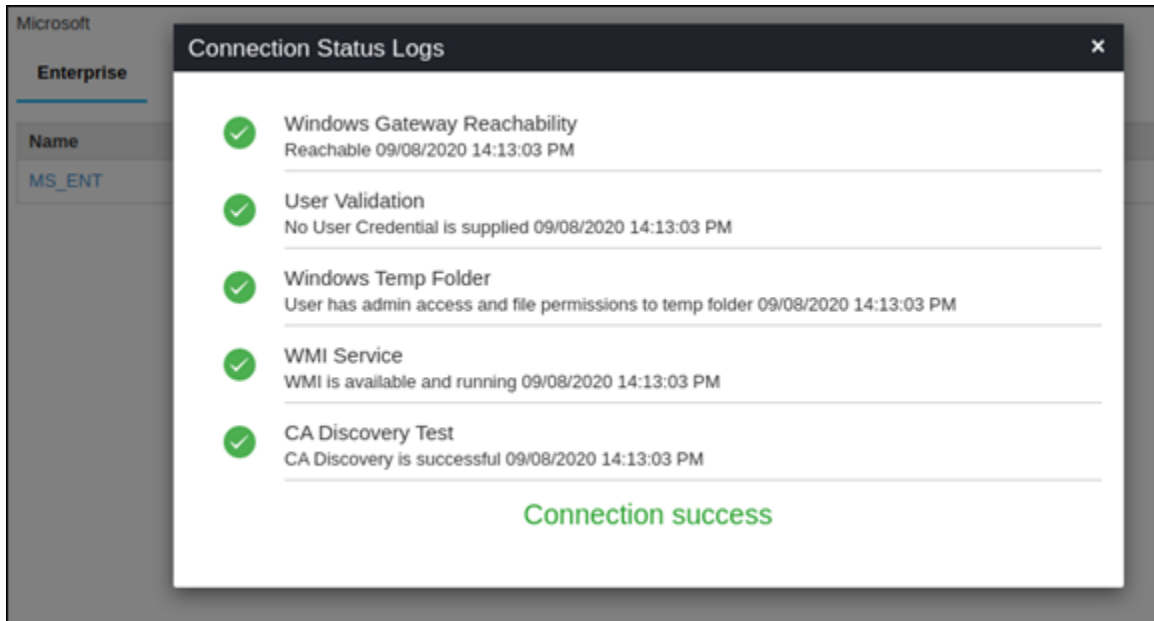
#### Success Message.



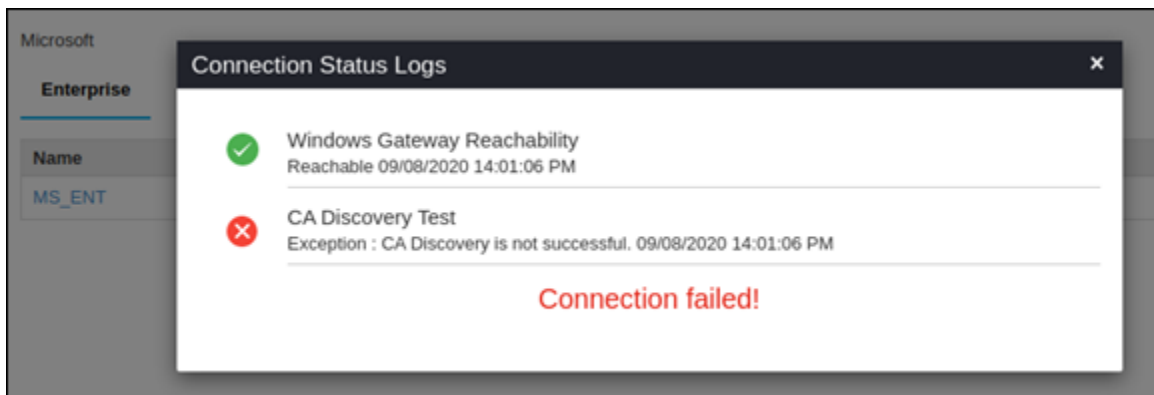
#### Success Scenario for Native API



#### Success Scenario for Powershell



### Success scenario for WMI



## Nexus

- Prerequisites for Nexus
- Configuring Nexus CA
- Validating Nexus

## Prerequisites for Nexus

The following are the prerequisites for configuring a Nexus CA account in AppViewX:

- A Nexus Account with Administrator role Access.
- Before discovery or enrollment, the customer must upload the CA certificates manually.
- The AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure the proxy.

## Configuring Nexus CA

To configure the Nexus CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Nexus** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.

**General Information - Field and Description Table**

| Name                                     | Description   | Validation   |
|--|---|--|
| <b>*CA Account name</b>                  | A unique name to identify the CA setting  | No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters. |
| <b>*Purpose/ Usage</b>                   | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, server and clients   | NA   |
| <b>Proxy Required</b>                    | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication. | NA   |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b> | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  | NA   |




**Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.

**CA Configuration Section - Field and Description Table**

| Options            | Description  |
|--------------------|--|
| * <b>SSL URL</b>   | Base URL of the SSL API                                    |
| * <b>User Name</b> | Provide a username of the GCC to communicate with the CA.  |
| * <b>Password</b>  | Provide a password for the GCC to communicate with the CA. |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

6. Select **Fetch Procedures**.



**Note:** The procedures available in the Nexus CA account will be fetched and listed for the specific user.

7. To map the fetched procedures, click on one or many and click the **Actions** dropdown:

- a. **CASE 1** - If the user selects Server only in Purpose and Usage, then the fetched procedure by default will be of server/client both. The Action dropdown will only have - **Map as Server.** and **MAP as Default**
- b. **CASE 2** - If the user selects Client only in Purpose and Usage, then the fetched procedure by default will be of server/client both. The Action dropdown will only have - **Map as Client.** and **MAP as Default**
- c. **CASE 3** - If the user selects Server and Client both in Purpose and Usage, then the fetched procedure by default will be of server/client both. The Action dropdown will have both the actions **Map as Client , Map as Server,** and **MAP as Default**

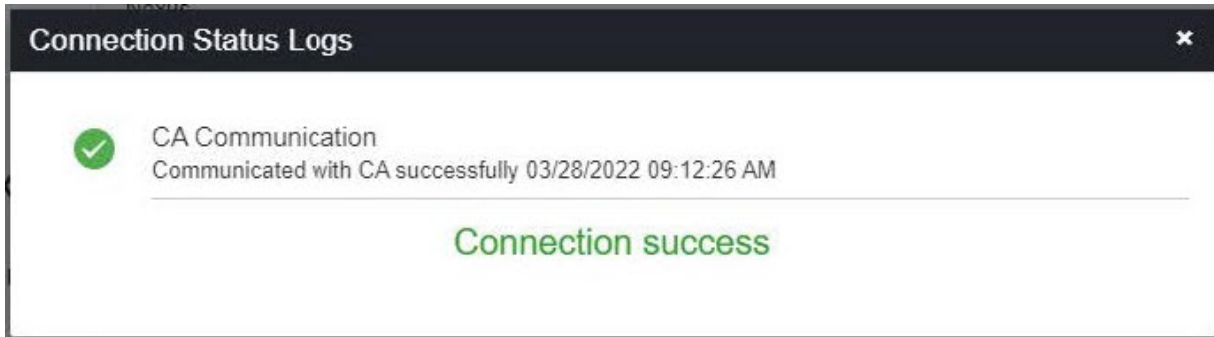
8. Click **Save**.

## Validating Nexus

Once the Nexus settings are added, the validation must be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Nexus is configured properly.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Nexus** in the left side vendor list  
The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

4. The CA communication will be validated and the Connection Status will be shown as either Success or Failure.



## OpenTrust CA

- [Configuring OpenTrust CA](#)
- [Validating OpenTrust Connection](#)

## Configuring OpenTrust CA


To configure the OpenTrust CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **OpenTrust** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

**General Information - Field and Description Table**

| Name                    | Description   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>*CA Account name</b> | A unique name to identify the CA setting.<br><b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters. |
| <b>*Purpose/Usage</b>   | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled.   |


| Name                                     | Description   |
|--|---|
|  | For example: Server and Client  |
| <b>Proxy Required</b>                    | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication. |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b> | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the OpenTrust CA APIs for Certificate Management.

#### CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

| Name                          | Description  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <b>*Client Authentication</b> | Client authentication certificate for API communication.<br><b>Note:</b> Must be a valid <.p12> file.              |
| <b>*Base URL</b>              | This URL will contain just the hostname of the OpenTrust CA instance. Eg - https://api.opentrust.net/enterprise/v2 |

 **Note:** The asterisk (\*) symbol indicates a mandatory field.

6. Click **Fetch CA and Profile Names**.

The attributes available for the CA account will be fetched from the Certificate Authority along with the CA and profile names.



**Note:** The pop-up message is displayed as **CA and profiles fetched**.

7. Click **Save**.

The created OpenTrust configuration settings will be added.



**Note:** The pop-up message is displayed as **<CA\_name> Settings Added.**

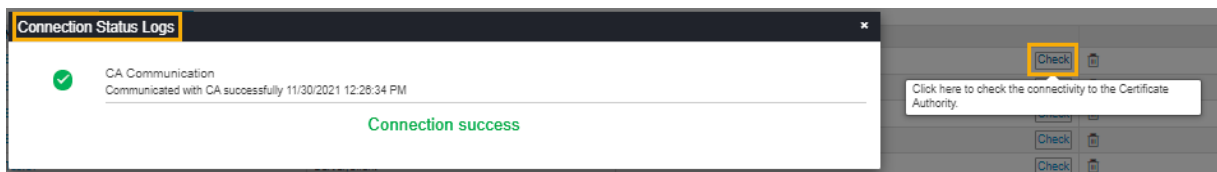
## Validating OpenTrust Connection

Once the OpenTrust settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and OpenTrust is properly configured.

To validate the OpenTrust connection,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **OpenTrust** in the left side vendor list.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



## Symantec CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Symantec CA](#)
- [Validating Symantec](#)

## Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring a Symantec account in AppViewX:


- A Symantec client certificate for a user having the necessary access for enrolling the certificates and other Certificate Lifecycle Management(CLM) operations.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure proxy. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>
- Symantec users should be associated with the role “**w=VICE2 web services application**”.
- Required organization status should be “valid”.
- If the EV certificate type is enabled, then the EV status of the organization should be “Yes”.
- The required domain should be registered with the organization.
- The required certificate types should be enabled with the required values in the portal.
- Unit values should be available for the required certificate type.


## Configuring Symantec CA

To configure the Symantec CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Symantec** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.



**General Information - Field and Description Table**

| Name                                     | Description   |
|--|---|
| <b>*CA Account name</b>                  | A unique name to identify the CA setting.<br><br><div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  <b>Note:</b> No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name must not start with special characters. </div> |
| <b>*Purpose/Usage</b>                    | Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, Server and Client.   |
| <b>Proxy Required</b>                    | Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.   |
| <b>Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)</b> | Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.  |

| Name  | Description |
|---|-------------|
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |             |

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Symantec CA APIs for Certificate Management.

**CA Configuration - Field and Description Table**

| Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
| * <b>Certificate and Key</b>  | Client authentication certificate for API communication.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> Must be a valid <.p12> or <.pfx> file. |
| * <b>URL</b>  | Symantec URL used for API communications. For example, <b>https://certmanager-webservices.websecurity.symantec.com/vswebservices/</b>   |
| * <b>Jurisdiction hash</b>  | Jurisdiction hash of the Symantec account. Available in the top right corner of the Symantec portal.  |
| * <b>First name</b>   | First name of the user.   |
| * <b>Last name</b>  | Last name of the user.  |
|  <b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) symbol indicates a mandatory field. |   |

6. Click **Save**.

## Validating Symantec

Once the Symantec settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Symantec is properly configured. To validate the Symantec CA,

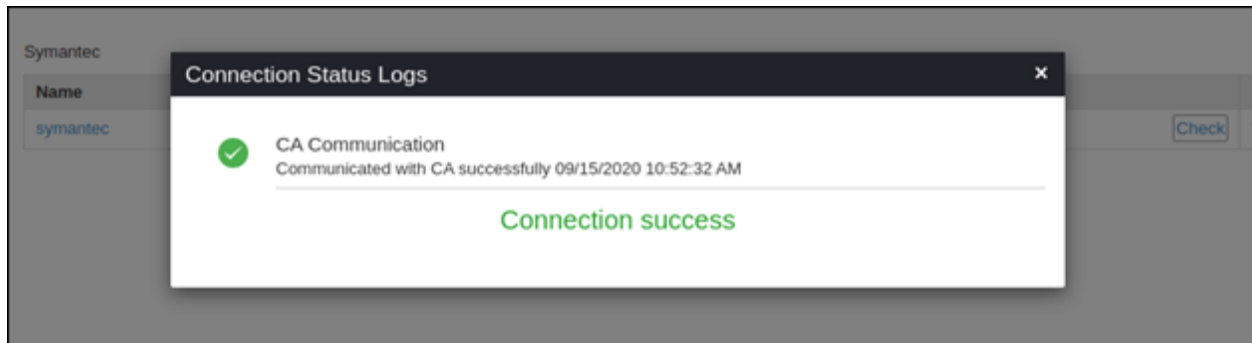
1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Symantec** in the left side vendor list

The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.

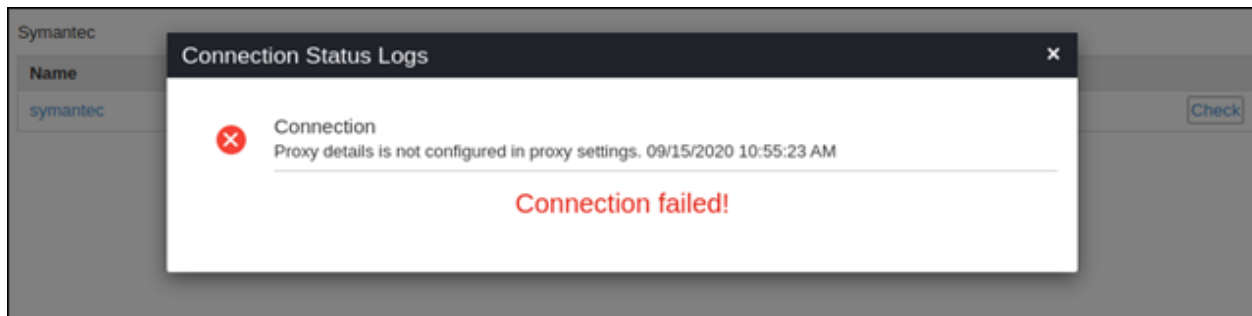
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.

### Success Scenario



### Failed Scenario



## Trustwave CA

- [Before you Begin](#)
- [Configuring Trustwave CA](#)
- [Validating Trustwave](#)

## Before you Begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring Trustwave CA in AppViewX:

- Trustwave API URL. Ex: <https://testapi.ssl.trustwave.com/3.0/>
- Reachability from AppViewX southbound to Trustwave API URL via proxy or direct internet connection
- Valid credentials for communicating to Trustwave CA via API
- Reseller id
- Account details provided in Trustwave account such as Organization Name, Email address, Organization Address, City, State, Zip code, Country, Phone number
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure the proxy. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>

## Configuring Trustwave CA

To configure the Trustwave CA,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Trustwave** in the left side vendor list.
4. Configure the **General Information** details as follows:
  - a. **CA Account name** - Provide an account name for the CA setting.
  - b. **Purpose/Usage** - Choose the certificate categories that will be managed by this setting. Possible certificate categories could be:
    - i. Server
    - ii. Code Signing
  - c. **Proxy Required** - Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via **Proxy**.
  - d. Choose the appropriate **Data Center**.
5. Configure the **CA Configuration** with information you want to configure:
  - a. **API URL**: The Trustwave API URL to communicate. Ex: <https://testapi.ssl.trustwave.com/3.0/>
  - b. **Username**: The username for API authentication.
  - c. **Password**: The password for API authentication.
  - d. **Reseller ID**: The Reseller Id for the account.
6. Configure the **Account Details** with information you want to configure:
  - a. **Name**: The Organization name given in the Trustwave account.
  - b. **Email Address**: The Administrator or organization email address given in the Trustwave account.
  - c. **Address**: The Organization Address given in the Trustwave account.

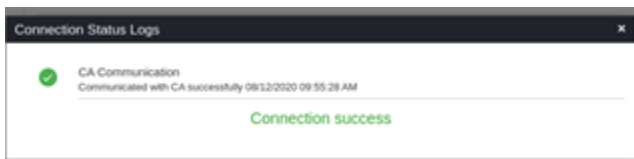
- d. **City**: The city name given in the Trustwave account.
  - e. **State**: The state name given in the Trustwave account.
  - f. **Zip code**: The zip code given in the Trustwave account.
  - g. **Country**: The country code given in the Trustwave account. Ex: US.
  - h. **Phone number**: The phone number given in the Trustwave account.
7. Click **Save**.

## Validating Trustwave

Once the Trustwave settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Trustwave is properly configured. To validate the Trustwave CA,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Trustwave** in the left side vendor list  
The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



## Groups

Before starting the configuration of Certificate Groups, it is important to be aware of the following key points:

- **Certificate Groups** are used to classify certificates based on different business units
- In certain organizations, **Certificate Groups** are used for assigning access permissions. Only privileged users, typically those inheriting permissions from the Resource > User Group, have the ability to view the corresponding **Certificate Groups**.
- Administrators should be assigned to a **Role** that grants them access to perform the following actions:
  - Create/ modify a group
  - Delete a group
  - Edit Default group

- [Creating a Group](#)
- [Modifying a Group](#)
- [Deleting a Group](#)

## Creating a Group

Assign the user to a user group that (inherits from resource and role) enables them to access the certificate group.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policy > Groups**.



**Note:** KUBE+ is packaged with default certificate groups **Default** and **Certificate-Gateway** .

2. Click the **+ Create** button in the command bar to create a new group.
3. On the **Group : Create**, enter or select the required information.

### Fields and Description for the Group Details Section

| Name                          | Type   | Mandatory | Description   | Validation   |
|-------------------------------|--------|-----------|---|--|
| <b>Select Group Hierarchy</b> | Select | Yes       | Select the parent group to which the new group should be associated | NA   |
| <b>Group Name</b>             | Text   | Yes       | Enter a unique name for the new group                               | The name should not start with special characters and spaces. No special characters are allowed except('.', '-', '_') and name cannot end with space |
| <b>Application ID</b>         | Text   | No        | Provide organization ID (if any) to associate with the new group    | NA   |
| <b>Description</b>            | Text   | No        | Provide the purpose of the new group                                | NA   |

## Fields and Description for the Other Details Section

| Name                                  | Type                | Mandatory | Description  | Validation |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------|--|------------|
| <b>Contact Name</b>                   | Text                | No        | Provide contact person to whom changes should be intimated   | NA         |
| <b>Line of Business Name</b>          | Text                | No        | Provide the name of the business unit  | NA         |
| <b>Email</b>                          | Text                | No        | Provide contact mail address   | NA         |
| <b>Environment Name</b>               | Text                | No        | Provide environment name   | NA         |
| <b>Phone Number</b>                   | Text                | No        | Provide a phone number for contact   | NA         |
| <b>Inventory Number</b>               | Text                | No        | Provide inventory number   | NA         |
| <b>Cost Center/ Hierarchy</b>         | Text                | No        | Provide Cost Center code/ label  | NA         |
| <b>Push Certificate Automatically</b> | Check box           | No        | By enabling the check box, the renewed/ reissued certificates in this group are automatically associated with their device | NA         |
| <b>Renew Automatically</b>            | Toggle button       | No        | Turn <b>On</b> to automatically renew the certificate belongs to this group.   | NA         |
| <b>Associated Policy</b>              | Dropdown (disabled) | Yes       | Displays the policy associated with this group.  | NA         |

- Click **Create** to create the group.

Users can view the group only if it is associated with the **Resource** of their **User Group**. To associate the **Group** to a **Resource** click the **Create Group and Configure the Resources for User Access** button instead of **Create** button. This will create the group and go to **Resource**. Refer to Create a Resource section in the [Platform User guide](#) to configure user access.

- The newly created **Group** is added to the Group inventory. Click the **Name** (Group name) to view the group details.

- On the Certificate Count column, click on the count link of Server/Client/Device/Code Signing to view the certificates.




**Note:** After the certificate discovery, you can view the count of certificates (Server, Client, Device, and Code Signing) associated with this group.

## Modifying a Group

- Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policy > Groups**.
- On the Group Inventory page, click the **Name** (Group name).
- Modify required fields in the group and click **Update**. Field descriptions are available in [Create a Group](#) section.



## Deleting a Group

- Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policy > Groups**.
- On the group inventory page, select the check box against the group you want to delete.
- Click  Delete in the command bar.
- On the confirmation pop-up, click **Yes** to proceed.

## Cluster Policy

Cluster Policy enforces security prerequisites, standardizes certificate issuance, and ensures compliance, all while promoting secure certificate management practices throughout your clusters.

On the Cluster Inventory page,

- refresh the list, click the  (refresh) icon.
- go to the pages, click the  (navigation) icon.
- hover the mouse over the number of row displayed on the page, the **Show** popup opens and choose the no. of rows to be displayed on the page.

1 to 6 of 6

---

**Show :**

25 Records

50 Records

75 Records

100 Records

The cluster policy inventory list includes the following information:

#### Column and Description table

| Column Name             | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Name</b>             | Unique policy name to be associated with one or more clusters. The special characters (-) and (_) are allowed. Maximum 255 characters are allowed. |
| <b>Type</b>             | Type of cluster policy.  |
| <b>Created By</b>       | User ID of the policy creator.   |
| <b>No. of Clusters</b>  | Count of clusters associated with the policy.  |
| <b>No. of Namespace</b> | Count of namespaces associated.  |
| <b>Last Updated</b>     | Last updated Timestamp.  |

- [Creating a CA Policy](#)
- [Deleting a Cluster Policy](#)

## Creating a CA Policy

Create Policy enables the Infosec teams / PKI administrators to create, define and enforce policies for one more cluster managed in the inventory.



**Note:** The certificate automations (creation, renewal, etc.) initiated from a specific cluster must adhere to the policy parameters outlined in this policy inventory. Any cluster that is not a part of or does not align with the Cluster Policy will be denied certificate automations.

### Why is Cluster Policy Essential?

Cluster Policy is your toolbox of rules and guidelines that you set up to manage the safe issuance of SSL/TLS certificates within your Kubernetes cluster. AppViewX offers various ways to ensure that these policies are followed when certificates are issued.

- **CA Setting** - When your application management teams work within a specific namespace, they often need access to a private CA to request certificates for their unique domains. The CA Setting policy type takes care of configuring this private CA and manages how certificates are provided within this specific namespace.
- **CA Setting Cluster** - If your application teams are deploying across the entire cluster, no matter where their apps land, the CA Setting Cluster policy type steps in. It handles the configuration of the CA and ensures certificates are issued seamlessly, maintaining security and consistency throughout the cluster.

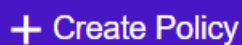
### Prerequisites:

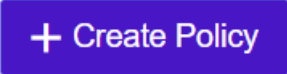
- Ensure [CA integration](#) is completed.
- Ensure you configured organization PKI standards as [CA Policy](#).
- Ensure the [Group](#) is created.

To create a cluster policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > Cluster Policy**

On the **Cluster Policy** page, the created policies are displayed, if any.



2. Click .
3. On the Cluster Policy Information page, enter/select the policy information fields.

### Cluster Policy - Field and Description Table

| Field               | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>Policy Name*</b> | Enter a unique policy name to be associated with one or more clusters. |
| <b>Type*</b>        | Select a type from dropdown list. The options are:                     |

| Field                         | Description  |
|-------------------------------|--|
|                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CA Settings Cluster - cluster wide global policy.</li> <li>• CA Setting - Policy to be applied for a specific namespace or a project within a cluster.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Clusters*</b>              | Select preferred clusters from the dropdown list.  |
| <b>Certificate Group*</b>     | Select a certificate group from the dropdown list.   |
| <b>Associate CA Policy*</b>   | Select a CA policy from the dropdown list associated with certificate group.   |
| <b>Certificate Authority*</b> | Select a Certificate Authority from the dropdown list.   |
| <b>CA Settings*</b>           | Select a CA Settings from the dropdown list.   |

4. Click **Add**.

## Deleting a Cluster Policy

You can delete cluster policies from the inventory, if the user chooses to restrict and remove CLM operations on the designated cluster policy.

To delete a cluster policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > GROUPS & POLICIES > Cluster Policy**.
2. Select the designated cluster policy, regardless of whether it is in a Managed or Unmanaged state.
3. Click **Delete** on the menu bar.



### Note:

- A cluster policy can be removed from the inventory after deleting its associated configurations, including Cluster Policy, Issuer CA, and Certificates enrolled for the cluster, have been removed.
- Deleting cluster policy from the inventory will not remove the in-cluster KUBE+ components. Users are required to follow the [Uninstall and Clean Up](#) steps within the cluster policy to complete the removal process.

# Chapter 8: Automate Certificate Lifecycle Management

- [Steps for Automating Certificate Lifecycle Management](#)
- [Issuer CA](#)
- [Secure Apps Inventory](#)

## Steps for Automating Certificate Lifecycle Management

Request and provision certificates to your Kubernetes secrets or local volumes within a pod or a container and use them for securing your Kubernetes ingress or gateways. The provisioned certificates can also be automatically renewed before expiry.

The following outlines the step-by-step process to fully automate certificate lifecycle management within your clusters, ensuring compliance and promoting crypto-agility through simplified PKI policies.

1. Configure **Issuer CA** - Configure Certificate Authority Settings for your cluster and, if needed, fine-tune them to specific namespaces within the cluster to generate certificate signing requests
2. **Enroll Certificates** - The certificate request process involves obtaining certificates signed by the specified Certificate Authority (CA), which can then be deployed in Kubernetes secrets or pods.
3. **Download Certificates** - Process for retrieving certificates from the centralized inventory and deploying them to Kubernetes secrets or pods.

## Issuer CA

In KUBE+, Issue CA refers to CA Settings, a Kubernetes resource that represents the configuration of certificate authorities (CAs) responsible for generating signed certificates through certificate signing requests.

The issuer CA inventory list includes the following information:

**Issuer CA Inventory - Column Description Table**

| Column Name | Description   |
|-------------|---|
| <b>Name</b> | Unique CA Settings name. Alpha numerals and special characters (-) and (_) are allowed. |

**Issuer CA Inventory - Column Description Table (continued)**

| Column Name           | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <b>Created By</b>     | User ID of the policy creator.                               |
| <b>Cluster Name</b>   | Name of the cluster.   |
| <b>Cluster Policy</b> | Name of the policy that has been associated for the cluster. |
| <b>Last Updated</b>   | Last updated Timestamp.                                      |

- [Creating a CA Settings](#)
- [Deleting a Issuer CA](#)

## Creating a CA Settings

Create CA Setting enables the DevOps / CloudOps teams to create and configure CA Settings for their cluster based on the PKI policy defined for their clusters.


### Prerequisites:


- Ensure [CA integration](#) is completed.
- Ensure you configured organization PKI standards as [CA Policy](#).
- Ensure the [Group](#) is created.
- Ensure [Cluster Policy](#) is created.

To create a CA Settings:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Issuer CA**

On the **Issuer CA** page, the created policies are displayed, if any.



2. Click .
3. On the Create CA Settings page, enter/select the policy information fields in the General Information section.

**CA Settings - Field and Description Table**

| Field                    | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <b>CA Settings Name*</b> | Enter a CA settings name.  |
| <b>Select Cluster*</b>   | Select a cluster which was onboarded (or) cluster where the cert-orchestrator is deployed and managed in the inventory.                              |
| <b>Select Policy*</b>    | Select a required Cluster Policy associated to the cluster.  |
| <b>Group Name*</b>       | Select a Certificate Group and the respective CA Issuer associated with the Group.   |
| <b>Type*</b>             | Choose a specific CA Account and the specific profiles or attributes required to send the certificate signing requests to the Certificate Authority. |

4. On the Create CA Settings page, enter/select the policy information fields in the Certificate Authority Setting section.

**Certificate Authority Setting - Field and Description Table**



| Field                         | Description  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <b>Certificate Authority*</b> | Select a preferred certificate authority from the dropdown list. |
| <b>CA Account*</b>            | Select a preferred CA Account from the dropdown list.            |
| <b>Connector Name*</b>        | Select preferred clusters from the dropdown list.                |
| <b>Category*</b>              | Select a certificate group from the dropdown list.               |

5. Click **Generate CA Setting**.



**Note:**



- To see the commands in the full screen view, click the .
- To copy the command, click .

6. Click **Add** to add the CA setting to the CA Setting Inventory list.

## Deleting a Issuer CA

You can delete issuer CA from the inventory, if the user chooses to restrict and remove CLM operations on the designated issuer CA.

To delete a issuer CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Issuer CA**.
2. Select the designated issuer CA, regardless of whether it is in a Managed or Unmanaged state.
3. Click **Delete** on the menu bar.



### Note:

- A issuer CA can be removed from the inventory after deleting its associated configurations, including Cluster Policy, Issuer CA, and Certificates enrolled for the cluster, have been removed.
- Deleting issuer CA from the inventory will not remove the in-cluster KUBE+ components. Users are required to follow the [Uninstall and Clean Up](#) steps within the issuer CA to complete the removal process.

## Secure Apps Inventory

In KUBE+, Enroll Certificates refers to the process of creating a Kubernetes resource known as "Cert" which represents an SSL/TLS certificate. The Cert resource is generated by the cert-orchestrator and includes an associated certificate signing request. This request is then sent to the Certificate Authority (CA) for signing through the KUBE+ platform.

The Enroll Certificate inventory list includes the following information:

**Enroll Certificate Inventory - Column Description Table**

| Column Name             | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Certificate Name</b> | Name of the certificate.   |
| <b>Common Name</b>      | Common name of the certificate.  |
| <b>Cluster Name</b>     | Name of the cluster.   |
| <b>CA Settings Type</b> | Type of the CA settings.   |
| <b>Enroll To</b>        | The endpoint to which the certificate is deployed.<br>The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Secret</li> <li>• Pod</li> </ul>     |
| <b>Auto Renew</b>       | The status of auto-renewal for the enrolled certificates. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• True</li> <li>• False</li> </ul> |
| <b>Created By</b>       | User ID who enrolled the certificate.  |
| <b>Created Source</b>   | The source of the certificate enrollment request.  |
| <b>Updated Time</b>     | Last updated Timestamp.  |

- [Enrolling a Certificate](#)
- [Download a Certificate](#)
- [Deleting a Certificate](#)

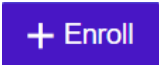
## Enrolling a Certificate

Enroll enables the DevOps teams / application owners to request a certificate for their application deployed in the desired Kubernetes cluster. The certificate which is enrolled can be deployed directly to the Kubernetes secrets or even the local volumes of the Kubernetes pods (or) containers.

**Prerequisites:**

- [CA Integration](#) done.
- [CA Policy](#) created.
- [Certificate Groups](#) created.
- [Cluster Policy](#) created.
- [Issuer CA](#) configured in KUBE+ and deployed in your cluster.

To enroll a certificate:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Cluster Security > Secure Apps** .
2. Click .
3. On the **Enroll Certificate** page, enter/select the field information in the General Information section for Cert resource to be created on Kubernetes cluster.

**General Information Section - Field and Description Table**

| Field                 | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <b>Enroll Cert To</b> | Select the endpoint where the cert is to be deployed. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Secret</b>: KUBE+ enrolls certificate and stores signed certificate and key in k8s secret</li> <li>• <b>POD</b> : KUBE+ has CSI provider which provisions certificate in the pods local volume</li> </ul> |
| <b>Format</b>         | The certificate file format that should be downloaded to the pod. The supported formats include PEM, PFX, P12, and JKS.  |
| <b>Encoding</b>       | The encoding type of the file content. Supported types include utf-8, hex, and base64.   |
| <b>File Name</b>      | The name of the certificate file to be created in the pod.   |
| <b>Password</b>       | If the certificate download is password-protected, provide the password.   |
| <b>Alias Name</b>     | The alias name in the keystore for the certificate file format, when it is in JKS format.  |

| Field                        | Description  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Alias Password</b>        | The password for the alias.  |
| <b>Is CA Required</b>        | Download the trust store for the enrolled certificate. Set to "False" will result in the download only leaf certificates.  |
| <b>Cluster</b>               | Select a cluster where the certificate to be deployed from the dropdown list.  |
| <b>CA Setting Name</b>       | Select a certificate authority to be used for signing the CSR from dropdown list.  |
| <b>Certificate Authority</b> | The Certificate Authority used for certificate enrollment as configured in the Cluster Policy.   |
| <b>Certificate Category</b>  | The type of certificate. The options include 'Client' and 'Server'.  |
| <b>Certificate Name</b>      | Enter a Certificate Name for certificate storage within the K8s cluster.   |
| <b>Namespace</b>             | The name of the namespace within the Kubernetes cluster where the secret is to be created.   |
| <b>Secret Name</b>           | Enter a Secret Name for certificate storage within the K8s cluster.  |
| <b>Enable Auto Renewal</b>   | Select a auto renewal option. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• False (default) - Certificates will not be automatically renewed prior to their expiration.</li> <li>• True - Certificates can be automatically renewed before they expire.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Renewal Policy</b>        | If Auto renewal set to "True", users have the option to renew certificates either by 'Regenerating a new key' or 'Renewing with the existing key'.   |
| <b>Renew Before 'X' days</b> | Set the auto-renewal period prior to the certificate's expiration.   |

| Field                               | Description  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <b>CSR Validity</b>                 | The validity for the CSR in the cluster, if not approved. The default is 24 hours. |
| <b>Overwrite valid certificates</b> | Replace existing valid certificates with the newly enrolled certificate.           |

4. Enter/select field information in the CSR Parameter section.

#### CSR Parameter Section - Field and Description Table

| Field                           | Description  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <b>CSR Generation Endpoint</b>  | The default CSR generation endpoint option is K8s Secret. In the scenario where private keys need to be generated in AppViewX, users can choose the CSR endpoint as 'AppViewX'.                    |
| <b>Common Name</b>              | Enter the common name of the cert.   |
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> | Select a Subject Alternative Name from the dropdown list. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DNS - DNS of the cert</li> <li>• IP Address - IP Address of the cer</li> </ul> |
| <b>DNS/IP Address</b>           | Enter the DNS/IP address of the cert.  |
| <b>Organization</b>             | Enter the organization of the cert.  |
| <b>Organization Unit</b>        | Enter the organization unit of the cert.   |
| <b>Locality</b>                 | Enter the locality of the cert.  |
| <b>Street</b>                   | Enter the street of the cert.  |
| <b>State</b>                    | Enter the state of the cert.   |
| <b>Province</b>                 | Enter the province of the cert.  |
| <b>Country</b>                  | Enter the country of the cert.   |
| <b>Postal Code</b>              | Enter the postal code of the cert.   |
| <b>Email Address</b>            | Enter the email address of the cert.   |



5. Enter/select the field information in the **Private Key Parameters** section.

**Private Key Parameters Section - Field and Description Table**

| Field             | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| <b>Key Type</b>   | Select a key type of the cert from the dropdown list. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RSA</li> <li>• EC</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Bit Length</b> | Select the bit length from the dropdown list. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CSR param bit lengths for RSA are 2048/4096/3072.</li> <li>• CSR param bit lengths for EC are 256/384/521.</li> </ul> |

6. Click **Generate Cert YAML** to get the certificate for enrollment in the **Certificate YAML** field.

**Note:**

- To see the commands in the full screen view, click the .
- To copy the command, click .

7. Click **Add** to add the certificate to the Enroll Certificate inventory list.

## Download a Certificate

Download enables the DevOps teams and application owners to download a retrieve certificate from certificate inventory for their application deployed in the desired Kubernetes cluster. The certificate which is downloaded can be deployed directly to the Kubernetes secrets or even the local volumes of the Kubernetes pods or containers.

### Prerequisites

- A valid certificate and key available in the certificate inventory of KUBE+.

To download a certificate:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Cluster Security > Secure Apps**.
2. Click **Download**.

3. On the **Download Certificate** page, enter/select the field information in the General Information section for CertLoad resource to be created on Kubernetes cluster.

**Download Certificate - Field and Description Table**

| Field                                     | Description  |
|---|--|
| <b>Certificate Type</b>                   | The type of certificate to be downloaded from the inventory. The type can be either 'Server' or 'Client'.  |
| <b>Common Name</b>                        | Common name of the certificate.  |
| <b>Look for certificates in Inventory</b> | The 'Search' button allows you to retrieve certificates based on the provided common name.   |
| <b>Select Certificate</b>                 | Select the certificate from the search results.  |
| <b>Serial Number</b>                      | Select the associated serial number of the certificate   |
| <b>Certificate Name</b>                   | Enter a Certificate Name for certificate storage within the K8s cluster.   |
| <b>Download To</b>                        | Select the endpoint where the cert is to be deployed. The options are:<br><br>Secret: KUBE+ enrolls the certificate and stores signed certificate and key in k8s secret.<br><br>POD: KUBE+ has a CSI provider, which provisions certificate in the pod's local volume. |
| <b>Namespace</b>                          | The name of the namespace within the Kubernetes cluster where the secret will be created.  |
| <b>Secret Name</b>                        | Enter a Secret Name for storing the certificate within the K8s cluster.  |
| <b>Format</b>                             | The certificate file format that should be downloaded to the pod. The supported formats include PEM, PFX, P12, and JKS.  |

| Field                 | Description   |
|-----------------------|---|
| <b>Encoding</b>       | The encoding type of the file content. Supported types include utf-8, hex, and base64.                                    |
| <b>Password</b>       | If the certificate download is password-protected, provide the password.  |
| <b>Alias Name</b>     | The alias name in the keystore for the certificate file format, when it is in JKS format.                                 |
| <b>Alias Password</b> | The password for the alias.   |
| <b>Is CA Required</b> | Download the trust store for the enrolled certificate. Set to "False" will result in the download only leaf certificates. |
| <b>File Name</b>      | The name of the certificate file to be created in the pod.  |

4. Click **Generate YAML** to get the certificate to be downloaded in the **Download YAML** field.
5. Copy and deploy the YAML in the cluster to retrieve the certificate from the Inventory. After the deployment is finished, click **Cancel**.

## Deleting a Certificate

You can delete certificate from the inventory, if the user chooses to restrict and remove CLM operations on the designated certificate.

To delete a certificate:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER SECURITY > Secure Apps**.
2. Select the designated certificate, regardless of whether it is in a Managed or Unmanaged state.
3. Click **Delete** on the menu bar.



**Note:**



- A certificate can be removed from the inventory after deleting its associated configurations, including Cluster Policy, Issuer CA, and Certificates enrolled for the cluster, have been removed.
- Deleting certificate from the inventory will not remove the in-cluster KUBE+ components. Users are required to follow the [Uninstall and Clean Up](#) steps within the certificate to complete the removal process.

# Chapter 9: Secure Service Mesh with mTLS authentication

- [Why Zero Trust is Critical?](#)
- [AppViewX Integration with Istio Service Mesh](#)
- [Enabling AppViewX Signer](#)

## Why Zero Trust is Critical?

Zero Trust helps organizations achieve compliance with industry and government regulations such as HIPAA, GDPR, and PCI-DSS. It ensures that access to sensitive data is strictly controlled and monitored, and that security policies are consistently enforced across the organization.

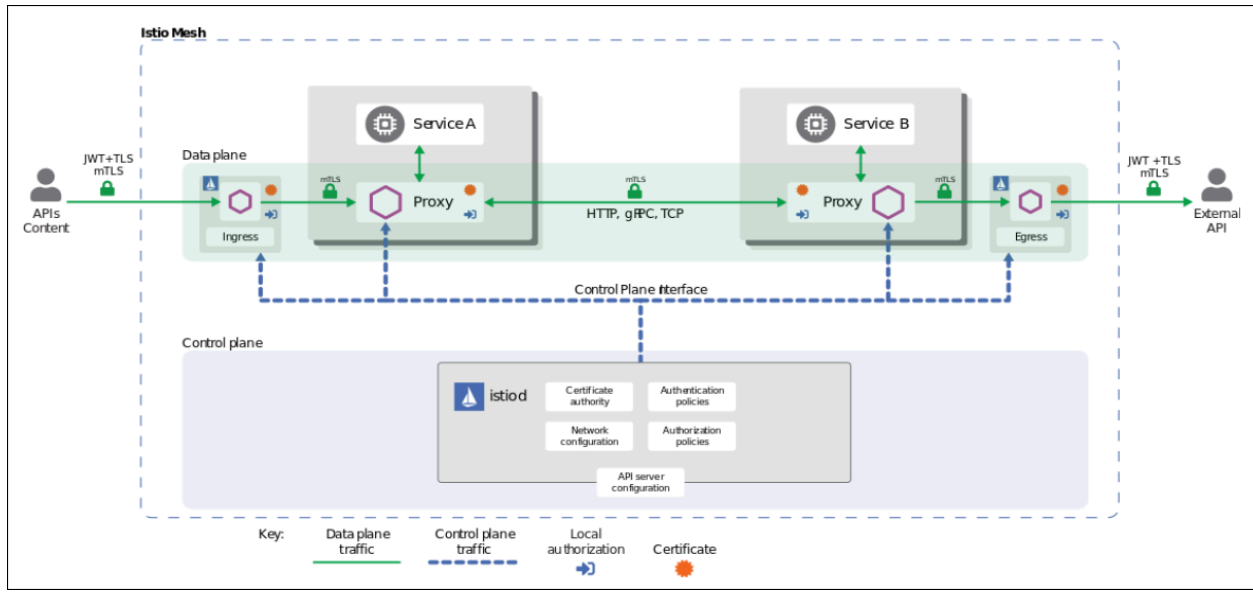
## AppViewX Integration with Istio Service Mesh

Istio is a popular service mesh solution that provides traffic management, security, and observability for microservices-based applications. Integrating Zero Trust with Istio provides an additional layer of security for microservices-based applications. By enforcing access controls, Istio ensures that only authorized traffic is allowed between microservices.

- [mTLS with Istio Service Mesh](#)

## mTLS with Istio Service Mesh

Istio can provide mutual TLS (Transport Layer Security) authentication, which ensures that both the client and server are authenticated before communication takes place. This is important for preventing unauthorized access, man-in-the-middle attacks, and data breaches. Istio uses the Envoy proxy to handle all network traffic, which allows it to manage mTLS encryption and decryption for each service. Istio also provides a certificate authority (CA) that can issue certificates for each service, allowing them to authenticate each other.



- Certificate Issuance & Management

## Certificate Issuance & Management

Istio's Certificate Authority (CA) is not compliant with industry standards, which require CAs to follow strict procedures for certificate issuance and management. The root certificate and private key of the Istio Certificate Authority (CA) is stored within the cluster which can be a potential security risk and this can lead to vulnerabilities in certificate management.

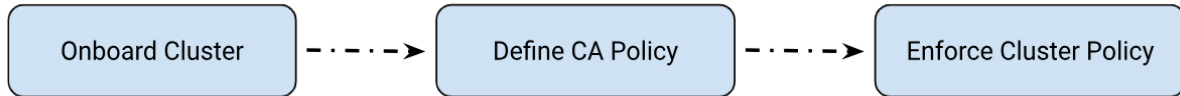
To eliminate the above there is a need to ensure the certificates in the control and data plane are rooted in the enterprise chain of trust but the real-world challenge with certificate management and Istio is how to integrate with existing enterprise PKI solutions.

## Enabling AppViewX Signer

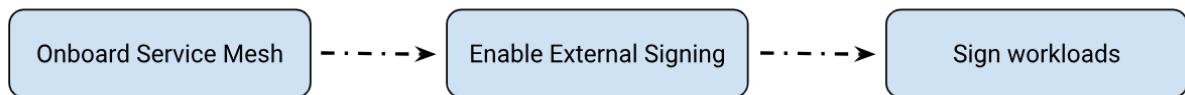
AppViewX Signer, the sub component of cert-orchestrator deployed in the Kubernetes cluster here solves the real-world challenge of Istio by signing the workload certificates with a trusted CA and installing the trust anchor within the cluster in auto enrolled fashion.

## 2 Steps to Enable the Zero Trust Security for Containers Using mTLS Certificates

1. Enforce PKI policies to ensure the use of compliant CAs and strong crypto-standards in your service mesh configuration.



2. Enable External CA signing mode for your Service Mesh configuration to sign workloads with mTLS certificates from your Enterprise PKI.



### Steps to Enable a Signer for mTLS Certificate Issuance

To enable Signer for mTLS certificate issuance for your cluster, follow these below steps.

1. **Onboard Cluster** - Deploy / enable AppViewX Signer as a part of the KUBE+ component (cert-orchestrator).
2. **Policy Enforcement** - Define and enforce CA and Cluster Policy
3. **Onboard Mesh** - Configure CSR signing mode and the Certificate Authority to be used in Service Mesh.
4. **Enable External CA Mode** - Configure Service Mesh to External CA mode for CSR signing.

- [Onboard Cluster](#)

- [Policy Enforcement for Secure ServiceMesh](#)

### Onboard Cluster

To deploy and enable signer component the KUBE+ component cert-orchestrator should be deployed in your Kubernetes cluster where the Service Mesh is enabled.

- [New Cluster](#)
- [Existing Cluster](#)

## New Cluster

If you are deploying the cert-orchestrator for the first time in your cluster refer [Onboarding a Cluster](#) to obtain the deployment configuration for deploying cert-orchestrator.



**Note:**

While generating the deployment configuration select the Feature gate **Enable mTLS Certificates for Service Mesh** which enables AppViewX Signer as a part of the deployment.

## Existing Cluster

For an already onboarded cluster in KUBE+ the signer component can be enabled via modifying the deployment configuration and executing the updated installation command at your cluster.

Refer to [Modifying Feature Gates of Cluster](#) for the steps on how to add (or) delete feature gates to an existing deployment.



**Note:** While generating the modifying the deployment configuration select the Feature gate **Enable mTLS Certificates for Service Mesh** which enables AppViewX Signer as a part of the deployment.

## Policy Enforcement for Secure ServiceMesh

To enable mTLS certificate issuance for application workloads from your Enterprise PKI, the PKI policies should be defined and enforced for your Service Mesh deployment.

The process for defining and enforcing the policy definition for your service mesh deployment is as follows.

1. **CA Integration** - Integrate AppViewX KUBE+ with your Internal CA for signing the certificates for your service mesh workloads.
2. **CA Policy** - Define CA Policy to enforce your organization crypto standards and map them to Certificate Groups ( to categorize certificates based on business units).
3. **Enforce Cluster Policy** - Enforce dedicated CA Policy / PKI policy to one more cluster to promote secure and compliant certificate management practices.

- [CA Integration](#)

- [CA Policy](#)

- [Cluster Policy](#)

## CA Integration

Service Mesh can be integrated with your Enterprise Internal PKI only for signing application workloads with mTLS certificates.

AppViewX supports integrating with EJBCA and Microsoft CA for signing the mTLS service mesh workloads. Refer [CA Integration](#) for the steps on how to configure AppViewX KUBE+ with the respective Certificate Authority.

## CA Policy

Configure certificate issuance parameters to enforce strong crypto standards for your mTLS workloads. Refer [CA Policy](#) for the steps on how to configure CA policy and [Certificate Group](#) for associate policies to certificate groups.

## Cluster Policy

Configure Cluster Policy to enforce a dedicated CA/PKI policy for the service mesh external CA integration. Refer [Create Policy](#) for the steps on how to configure the Cluster Policy.



Note : For Service Mesh External CA signing the policy type must be set to **CA Setting Cluster** and the certificate authorities supported are EJBCA and Microsoft CA

# Chapter 10: Mesh Inventory

- [Mesh Inventory Overview](#)

## Mesh Inventory Overview

Mesh Inventory displays a list of service mesh onboarded for a cluster. On Mesh Inventory page, you can:

- refresh the list, click the  (refresh) icon.
- go to the pages, click the  (navigation) icon.

The mesh inventory list includes the following information:

### Mesh Inventory - Column and Description Table

| Mesh Name                    | Description   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Name</b>                  | Unique name to identify the mesh configuration for the designated cluster.  |
| <b>Cluster Name</b>          | Name of the Cluster for which the service mesh requires external CA signing.  |
| <b>CA Mode</b>               | Issuer's CA mode.   |
| <b>Vendor</b>                | The vendor name of the service mesh.  |
| <b>Certificate Authority</b> | Certificate Authority to verify the identities of requesting certificates and links them to cryptographic keys by issuing digital certificates. |
| <b>Created By</b>            | Refers to the user who created the mesh.  |

- [Onboarding a Mesh](#)
- [Deleting a Mesh](#)
- [Significance of Issuer CA Mode](#)

## Onboarding a Mesh

To enable External CA signing for the Service Mesh deployed in your cluster, the Cert-orchestrator running with the Signer component needs to be enabled with a Certificate Authority Setting (CA Setting), a Kubernetes resource that represents the configuration of certificate authorities (CAs) responsible for generating signed certificates through certificate signing requests.

### Prerequisites:

- [CA Integration](#) done.
- [CA Policy](#) created.
- [Certificate Groups](#) created.
- [Cluster Policy](#) created.

To onboard a mesh:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Inventory > Mesh Inventory**.
2. Click **Onboard Mesh** on the menu bar.
3. On the **Onboard Mesh** page, enter/select the field information for the **General Information** and **Mesh Certificate Authority** sections.

### General Information - Field and Description Table



| Field                      | Description  |
|----------------------------|--|
| <b>General Information</b> |  |
| <b>Name</b>                | Enter a unique name that can be used to identify the mesh configuration associated with the specified cluster. |

| Field                             | Description   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| <b>Cluster</b>                    | Select a cluster from the dropdown list in which the service mesh needs to be configured with an external CA for signing.   |
| <b>Vendor</b>                     | Select a service mesh vendor from the dropdown list.  |
| <b>Mesh Certificate Authority</b> |   |
| <b>Issuer CA mode</b>             | <p>Select a radio button of Issuer CA mode. The options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• via AppViewX - This option allows to send the workload certificate signing requests directly to AppViewX and signed by the configured CA Setting (Certificate Authority). The supported CA is EJBCA.</li> <li>• Air-Gapped - This option allows to sign the workload certificate signing requests by an Intermediate/SUB CA where the signing happens within the Kubernetes cluster. The Supported CAs are EJBCA and Microsoft CA.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Select Policy</b>              | Select the Cluster Policy from the dropdown list, which derives the associated CA for external CA signing.  |
| <b>Certification Authority</b>    | This field is not applicable, if you choose <b>via AppViewX</b> for Issuer CA mode. If you select Issuer CA mode as Air-Gapped, then enter/select the necessary details.  |
| <b>Ca Account</b>                 | The account of the CA.  |
| <b>Common Name</b>                | Common name of the certificate.   |
| <b>Organization</b>               | Enter the name of the organization.   |
| <b>Organization unit</b>          | Enter the name of the organization unit.  |
| <b>Locality</b>                   | Enter the locality of the certificate.  |
| <b>State</b>                      | Enter the state of the certificate.   |

| Field                         | Description  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <b>Country</b>                | Enter the country of the certificate.  |
| <b>Email Address</b>          | Enter the email address of the certificate.  |
| <b>Private Key Parameters</b> |  |
| <b>Key Type</b>               | Select a key type of the certificate from the dropdown list. The values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RSA</li> <li>• ECDSA</li> </ul>  |
| <b>Bit Length</b>             | Select a bit length for RSA or ECDSA. The values for RSA are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2048</li> <li>• 4096</li> <li>• 3072</li> </ul> The values for ECDSA are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 256</li> <li>• 384</li> <li>• 521</li> </ul> |

4. Click **Generate YAML** to get the commands in the Issuer CA YAML field.

**Note:**

- To see the commands in the full screen view, click the .
- To copy the command, click .

5. Click **Add** to add the mesh to the Mesh Inventory list.

## Deleting a Mesh

You can delete mesh from the inventory, if the user chooses to restrict and remove CLM operations on the designated mesh.

To delete a mesh:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Inventory > Mesh Inventory**.
2. Select the designated mesh, regardless of whether it is in a Managed or Unmanaged state.
3. Click **Delete** on the menu bar.

**Note:**

- A mesh can be removed from the inventory after deleting its associated configurations, including Cluster Policy, Issuer CA, and Certificates enrolled for the cluster, have been removed.
- Deleting mesh from the inventory will not remove the in-cluster KUBE+ components. Users are required to follow the [Uninstall and Clean Up](#) steps within the mesh to complete the removal process.

## Significance of Issuer CA Mode

Issuer CA mode for External CA signing plays a vital role in optimizing the speed of certificate issuance to your application workloads running as a part of the service mesh infrastructure.

AppViewX KUBE+ supports multiple modes of Issuer CA for mTLS certificate issuance.

- **Issuer Mode via AppViewX** : In this mode of issuing a mTLS certificate for a workload, the CSR requests are sent to AppViewX via API from the Cert-orchestrator (appviewx signer) deployed in your Kubernetes cluster to the cluster (or) environment where AppViewX is deployed.

Example : Assume an on premises k8s cluster where your workloads are running and the CSR requests are sent to the AppViewX environment provided as a SaaS service to your enterprise. In this case the network hops and delays for the CSR request to land to AppViewX and then signed by CA will not be optimal.

Also, the CSR generated by service mesh (Istio in this case) is valid for 10 seconds only for a workload and the entire process of signing the certificate by CA via AppViewX should be completed within this time frame.

AppViewX recommends to use Issuer mode as AppViewX only when the clusters running workload and AppViewX environment are nearer to each other.

- **Issuer Mode via Air-Gapped** : In this mode of issuing a mTLS certificate for a workload, the AppViewX signer component running as a part of Cert-orchestrator generates a SUB CA / Issuing CA and the certificate and key used for signing the workloads are kept in the memory of the signer component itself for faster mTLS certificate issuance.

The signer component also keeps the signing certificate and the private key encrypted in the k8s secret for reusing it when the cert-orchestrator pods or clusters are restarted.

AppViewX recommends using Issuer mode as Air-Gapped when your AppViewX subscription is a SaaS service and when the clusters running workload and AppViewX environment are not at the nearest proximity.

# Chapter 11: Enable External Signing

- [Overview](#)
- [Creating a Signer Profile](#)

## Overview

Configuring the External CA configuration settings which includes Certificate Authority Settings and the Issuer CA mode, the AppViewX signer needs to be plugged in to the service mesh configuration to sign certificate from External CA


### Prerequisites:

- [Service Mesh onboarded](#) in the Mesh Inventory.

## Creating a Signer Profile

In the context of Service Mesh, the term "Signer" refers to Kubernetes resources that are responsible for configuring and enabling the external CA signing mode. These resources facilitate the provision of signed certificates to workloads within the Service Mesh.

To enable an external CA signing mode in service mesh:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Cluster Security > Secure Service Mesh** .
2. Click  **+ Create Signer Profile** .
3. On the **Create Signer** page, enter/select the field information.

### Signer Creation - Field and Description Table



| Field            | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| <b>Name</b>      | Enter a unique name for the signer.   |
| <b>Mesh Name</b> | Select a service mesh configuration associated to the cluster onboarded in earlier. |
| <b>CA Mode</b>   | Select a designated issuance mode for the associated Mesh Certificate Authority.    |

| Field                            | Description  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <b>Profile Name</b>              | Enter a unique profile name. For example, <domain>/istio.                              |
| <b>External Secret Name</b>      | Enter the name of the secret where the trust store certificate should be synchronized. |
| <b>External Secret Namespace</b> | Enter the namespace of the secret.   |
| <b>Duration</b>                  | Enter the duration in the hours.   |

4. Click **Generate YAML** to get the commands in the **Singer YAML** field.



**Note:**

- To see the commands in the full screen view, click the .
- To copy the command, click .

5. Click **Add** to add the signer to the Signer inventory list.

# Chapter 12: Integrating Istio with Custom CA

- [About Integrating Istio with Custom CA](#)

## About Integrating Istio with Custom CA

AppViewX signer deployed in your cluster is now ready to sign all your service mesh application workload certificates from External Certificate Authority.

The Istio Service Mesh deployed in your cluster now needs to be reconfigured to enable Custom CA integration for provisioning workload certificates from External CA. Istio enables Custom CA integration using Kubernetes CSR API.

The root certificate for Custom CA in our case the Trust Certificate from EJBCA / Microsoft CA is loaded into the external ca secret configured in [Signer Profile](#) step. Refer to [Custom CA](#) integration steps in the Istio documentation to use the external CA secret.



**Note:** Change the Istio version accordingly in the URL to refer to the respective version of Istio deployed in your cluster.

# Chapter 13: Logs


- [Logs](#)
- [Viewing Details of a Log](#)
- [Filtering the Logs](#)

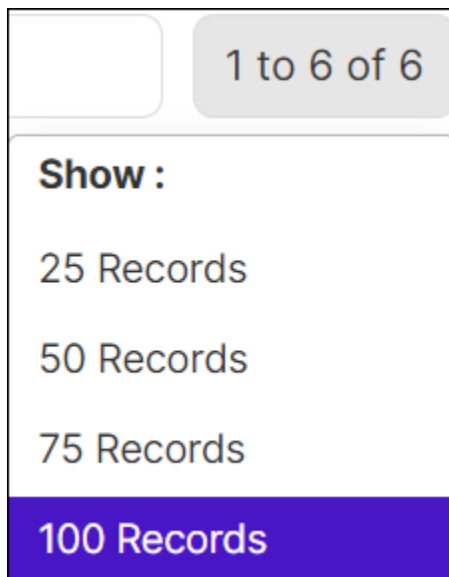
## Logs

Logs keep track of all activities that take place within KUBE+ or any external entity that is connected to the AppViewX system. The Logging functionality in AppViewX tracks user activities and creates the service level event logs.

To access the logs related to KUBE+, go to **menu > KUBE+ > LOGS > Logs** and then click the **Kube** tab, if not selected by default.

On the Logging page,

- go to the pages, click the  (navigation) icon.
- hover the mouse over the number of row displayed on the page, the Show popup opens and choose the no. of rows to be displayed on the page.



## Viewing Details of a Log

To view log details:

1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > LOGS > Logs**.
2. On the **Logging** page, click the **Kube** tab.
3. On the log screen, view all details for a log by hovering your cursor over each column of data or click the **▶ (Expand)** icon for the log you want to view. The table row expands to display all details for the log.



**Note:** Search for any logs from the logging list based on User, Device name, log message, object details, source IP, AppViewX node, Method of login also search based on a particular column.

## Filtering the Logs

To filter the logs:



1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > LOGS > Logs**.
2. Click the **Kube** tab.
3. On the Logging page, follow any of the following method to filter the logs:
  - Click **🕒 (DateTime)** icon, select the date range, and then click **OK** to view the logs within the date range.
  - Click the dropdown option beside the DateTime icon, and then select the preferred option. The options are:
    - Service
    - User
    - Type
    - Log Message
    - Severity

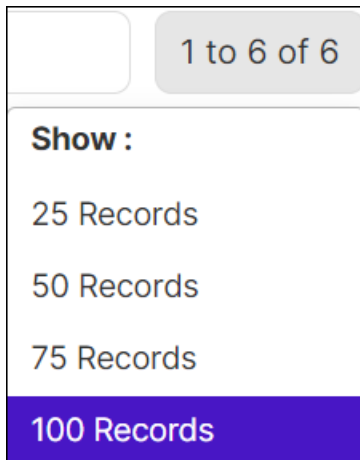
# Chapter 14: System Administration

- [Crypto Minions](#)
- [Configuring Cluster Settings](#)
- [Configuring Email Settings](#)
- [Setting up Configurations for Expired Certificates](#)
- [Auto Enrollment](#)

## Crypto Minions

Crypto Minions displays the list of Crypto minions within a cert-orchestrator. On the Crypto Minions page,

- refresh the list, click the  (refresh) icon.
- go to the pages, click the  (navigation) icon.
- hover the mouse over the number of row displayed on the page, the **Show** popup opens and choose the no. of rows to be displayed on the page.



The cluster inventory list includes the following information:

| Column Name  | Description            |
|--------------|------------------------|
| Cluster Name | Name of the cluster.   |
| Status       | Status of the cluster. |

| Column Name                       | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <b>No. of Nodes</b>               | Nodes enabled for the cluster.   |
| <b>Status</b>                     | Status of the resource. The possible statuses are Managed, Unmanaged, or Pending Approval. |
| <b>Cert Orchestrator Version</b>  | The version of Cert Orchestrator.  |
| <b>CSI Provider Version</b>       | The version tag of the image.  |
| <b>Infra Orchestrator Version</b> | The version of the Infra Orchestrator.   |

## Configuring Cluster Settings

To configure repository settings:

1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > System Administration > Repository Settings**.
2. On the Helm Repository section, enter the details. Contact AppViewX support to get the authentication credentials for the Helm repository.

### Helm Repository - Field and Description Table

| Field                 | Description                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>Repository URL</b> | Enter the helm repository URL. |
| <b>Username</b>       | Enter the username.            |
| <b>Password</b>       | Enter the password.            |

3. When deploying AppViewX KUBE+ components in the cluster, kube rbac proxy image is used for RBAC authentication. This image is typically downloaded directly from the internet. However, if you need to pull the image from a custom repository, replace the URL and tag as follows:

- URL: [gcr.io/kubebuilder/kube-rbac-proxy](https://gcr.io/kubebuilder/kube-rbac-proxy)
- Tag: v0.13.0

4. On the Docker Repository section, enter the details. Contact AppViewX support to get the authentication credentials for the Docker repository.

**Docker Repository - Field and Description Table**

| Field                 | Description                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>Repository URL</b> | Enter the Docker repository URL. |
| <b>Username</b>       | Enter the username.              |
| <b>Password</b>       | Enter the password.              |

## Configuring Email Settings

Within this section, you find email setting templates for certification action request. You have the capability to customize email IDs for each certification action requests. Once you've configured the email settings, emails will be automatically sent to the designated email addresses.

To configure email settings:

1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > System Administration > Email Settings**.
2. Click on the preferred certification action request.
3. Enter the valid email IDs in the displayed fields.

You can customize the field names by clicking on them and entering your preferred names.

Additionally, you can add more fields by clicking the **Add** button. If any of the fields are not required, you can remove them by clicking the delete icon.



**Note:** You can enter multiple email addresses, separated by commas.

4. Click **Save Changes**.

## Setting up Configurations for Expired Certificates

You can configure the settings for handling expired certificates.

To configure the setting for the expired certificates:

1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > System Administration > Expired Certificates**.
2. On **Expired certificate** section, enter/select the following details:

**Expired certificate - Field and Description Table**

| Field  | Description   |
|--|---|
| <b>Do you want to delete the expired certificates?</b> | <p>The options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>No</b> (default) - allows to retain the expired certificates.</li> <li>• <b>Yes</b> - to delete the expired certificates within the specified expiry date. When you select this option, you need to fill the following details: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of days after expiry</li> <li>• Backup Required</li> <li>• Do you want to delete the certificates from all groups?</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

3. On **Expired root and intermediate certificate** section, enter/select the following details:

**Expired root and intermediate certificate - Field and Description Table**

| Field  | Description   |
|--|---|
| <b>Do you want to delete the expired root and intermediate certificates?</b> | <p>The options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>No</b> (default) - allows to retain the expired root and intermediate certificates.</li> <li>• <b>Yes</b> - to delete the expired root and intermediate certificates within the specified expiry date. When you select this option, you need to fill the <b>Number of days after expiry</b> field.</li> </ul> |

4. Click **Save**.

## Auto Enrollment

- EST

## EST

EST stands for Enrollment over Secure Transport, it is a certificate management protocol targeting Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) clients which require digital certificates to prove their authenticity. EST also helps the clients in acquiring associated CA certificates. Some prerequisites and features are as follows:

- There should be an agent (avx\_vendor\_cert\_est\_agent) up and running for EST in AppViewX.
- This EST plugin can either be in HTTPS or HTTP, but it needs a gateway which supports client certificate authentication running in order to communicate with the client.
- It is highly recommended to keep the 'Approval Required' flag OFF in the **Menu > KUBE+ > GROUPS & POLICIES > CA Policy** page.

- [Configuring EST](#)

- [Validating EST](#)

## Configuring EST

To perform client certificate enrollments using EST protocol, the admin or a privileged user needs to first set up the EST server agent using the AppViewX portal. Upon successful set up of the EST server Agent through the portal, a URL will be generated. Clients can then use this URL to send enrollment requests to AppViewX via EST protocol.

The detailed steps for setting up the EST server agent are listed below:

1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > System Administration > Auto Enrollment > EST**.
2. Select **Add** or **Configure Now**.
3. Configure the **End Point Details** details as follows:

**Prerequisites for entering the IP/FQDN field:**

- The "Cloud Connector Name" (in the Add Cloud connector page) must be the same as the FQDN name entered.
- The CC should have the reachability to the Endpoint.
- If entering the IP then ensure that a single cloud connector is used.

The following table provides the field description for Agent Details section:

**End Point Details - Field and Description Table**

| Field Name   | Field Type | Description   | Validation   |
|--|------------|---|--|
| <b>*Name</b>   | Text       | A unique name (alphanumeric string) to identify the agent setting.<br><br>Acceptable Characters: A-Z, a-z, 0-9, '.', '_', '-' | Name should not start with special characters.             |
| <b>*FQDN/ IP</b>                                     | Text       | Enter the FQDN/IP address of the AppViewX cloud connector.  | Invalid FQDN/IP address (example: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx)         |
| <b>*Port</b>   | Text       | HTTP gateway port of the AppViewX node.   | Port will accept only numerical values between 0 to 65535. |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |   |  |

4. Configure the **Client Authentication** details as follows:

**Client Authentication = Only Certificate TLS**

**Client Authentication = Certificate TLS with HTTPs as fallback or Both Certificate TLS and HTTPs**

The following table provides the field description for CA Authentication section:

**Details for CA Authentication- Field and Description Table**

| Field Name                 | Field Type | Description   | Validation |
|----------------------------|------------|---|------------|
| <b>Authentication Mode</b> | Dropdown   | Select any one authentication method to be carried out during communication with clients.<br><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Only Certificate TLS</i> - During client authentication, only certificate TLS based authentication will be performed.</li> <li>• <i>Certificate TLS with HTTPs fallback</i> - During client authentication, when the certificate TLS fails, HTTPs based authentication will be performed as fallback.</li> </ul> | NA         |

| Field Name                       | Field Type   | Description   | Validation |
|----------------------------------|--------------|---|------------|
|                                  |              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Both Certificate TLS and HTTPs</i><br/>- During client authentication, both certificate TLS and HTTPs authentication will be performed one after the successful completion of the other.</li> </ul>   |            |
| <b>*Issuer Certificate</b>       | Dropdown     | Select one or more issuer certificates which needs to be checked for the client certificate authentication.   | NA         |
| <b>*HTTP Authentication Mode</b> | Radio button | <p>Select the type of HTTP auth mode either Basic/Digest.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Basic</i> - During Client authentication only the username and password values will be considered for HTTPs based authentication.</li> <li>• <i>Digest</i> - During Client authentication, along with username and password, nonce and realm values will also be supported.</li> </ul>                              | NA         |
| <b>*Fallback Credentials</b>     | Radio button | <p>Select Manual/Logged on user credentials - based on the selection users can configure the credentials manually or save as credentials equivalent to the logged in user.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Manual</i> - The Username and Password fields will be displayed to enter values.</li> <li>• <i>Logged on user credentials</i> - The Username and Password fields will not be displayed.</li> </ul> |            |


| Field Name   | Field Type | Description                       | Validation |
|--|------------|-----------------------------------|------------|
| <b>*Username</b>                                     | Text       | Username for HTTP authentication. | NA         |
| <b>*Password</b>                                     | Text       | Password for HTTP authentication. | NA         |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |                                   |            |

5. Configure the **CA Accounts** details as follows:

The following table provides the field description for CA Accounts section:

**CA Accounts - Field and Description Table**

| Field Name                   | Field Type   | Description   | Validation |
|------------------------------|--------------|---|------------|
| <b>*Certificate Group</b>    | Dropdown     | Select a specific group under which certificate needs to be enrolled.   | NA         |
| <b>*Certificate Category</b> | Radio button | Select a specific certificate type (Server/Client) to be enrolled.  | NA         |
| <b>*Select CA</b>            | Dropdown     | Select the required CA from the available options. The certificate will be enrolled under the selected CA.<br><br>The CAs associated with the Default certificate group are:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AppViewX</li> <li>• AppViewX PKIaaS</li> <li>• Amazon Private CA</li> <li>• DigiCert</li> <li>• DigiCert MPKI</li> <li>• Ejbca</li> <li>• Entrust</li> <li>• Entrust MPKI</li> <li>• GlobalSign Atlas</li> <li>• GlobalSign MSSL</li> <li>• Google</li> <li>• HydrantID</li> <li>• Microsoft Enterprise</li> </ul> | NA         |

| Field Name  | Field Type | Description  | Validation |
|---|------------|--|------------|
|   |            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Microsoft Standalone</li> <li>• Nexus</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> The Vendor Specific Details and Custom Attributes section are displayed for some of the CAs as follows:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DigiCert</li> <li>• EJBCA</li> <li>• Entrust</li> <li>• Entrust MPKI</li> <li>• GlobalSign MSSL</li> <li>• MS Enterprise</li> <li>• Nexus</li> </ul> </div> |            |
| <p><b>NOTE:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.</p> |            |  |            |

When **AppViewX** is selected as CA, The following table provides the field description for AppViewX CA:

**Details for AppViewX CA - Field and Description Table**

| Field Name                 | Field Type | Description   | Validation |
|----------------------------|------------|---|------------|
| <b>*CA Account</b>         | Select     | Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.  | NA         |
| <b>*Server Certificate</b> | Select     | Type 3 or more letters of the certificate keywords after which a list of server certificates issued from the above selected CA account will be displayed, one certificate can be selected for further | NA         |

| Field Name   | Field Type | Description   | Validation   |
|--|------------|---|--|
|  |            | communications with SCEP client machine.                      |  |
| <b>*CA Connector Name</b>                            | Text       | Name of the CA connector after certificate is being enrolled. | NA   |
| <b>*Certificate Validity</b>                         | Text       | Validity of the certificate to be enrolled.                   | Certificate validity accepts only numerical values |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |   |  |

When **AppViewX PKIaaS** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for AppViewX PKIaaS CA:

**Details for AppViewXPKIaaS CA - Field and Description Table**

| Field Name              | Field Type | Description  | Validation |
|-------------------------|------------|--|------------|
| <b>*CA Account</b>      | Dropdown   | Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.                     | NA         |
| <b>*Issuer Location</b> | Dropdown   | Select an issuer location that is associated with the CA account.  | NA         |
| <b>*Pool Name</b>       | Dropdown   | Select a pool name to issue the certificate.   | NA         |
| <b>*Issuer Name</b>     | Dropdown   | Select an issuer name to issue the certificate.  | NA         |
| <b>*CA Certificate</b>  | Dropdown   | Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the | NA         |

| Field Name                   | Field Type | Description   | Validation  |
|------------------------------|------------|---|---|
|                              |            | root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.            |   |
| <b>*CA Connector Name</b>    | Text       | Name of the CA connector after certificate is being enrolled. | NA  |
| <b>*Certificate Validity</b> | Text       | Validity of the certificate to be enrolled.                   | Certificate validity accepts only numerical values. |

When **Amazon Private CA** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for Amazon Private CA:

#### Details for Amazon Private CA - Field and Description Table

| Field Name                  | Field Type | Description  | Validation |
|-----------------------------|------------|--|------------|
| <b>*CA Account</b>          | Dropdown   | Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.   | NA         |
| <b>*Region</b>              | Dropdown   | Select a valid region associated with the CA account.<br>The dropdown is populated with the first available value.<br>Select an appropriate value as required.                                 | NA         |
| <b>*Issuer</b>              | Dropdown   | Select a valid issuer associated with the CA account.<br>The dropdown is populated with the first available value.<br>Select an appropriate value as required.                                 | NA         |
| <b>*Signature Algorithm</b> | Dropdown   | Select a valid issuer associated with the CA account.<br>The dropdown is populated with the first available value from the group's associated policy. Select an appropriate value as required. | NA         |
| <b>*CA Certificate</b>      | Text       | Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.              | NA         |

| Field Name                                    | Field Type | Description   | Validation  |
|---|------------|---|---|
| <b>*CA Connector Name</b>                     | Text       | Name of the CA connector after the certificate is enrolled. | NA  |
| <b>*Certificate Validity</b>                  | Dropdown   | Validity of the certificate to be enrolled. (in years)      | Certificate validity accepts only numerical values. |
| NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |   |   |

When **DigiCert CA** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for DigiCert CA:

#### Details for DigiCert CA - Field and Description Table

| Field Name                   | Field Type | Description   | Validation                   |
|------------------------------|------------|---|------------------------------|
| <b>*CA Account</b>           | Dropdown   | Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.  | NA                           |
| <b>*Division</b>             | Dropdown   | Select a division associated with the CA account.<br><br>The dropdown is populated with the first available value.<br>Select an appropriate value as required.                    | NA                           |
| <b>*Certificate Type</b>     | Dropdown   | Select a valid cert type associated with the CA account.<br><br>The dropdown is populated with the first available value.<br>Select an appropriate value as required.             | NA                           |
| <b>*CA Certificate</b>       | Text       | Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed. | NA                           |
| <b>*CA Connector Name</b>    | Text       | Name of the CA connector after the certificate is enrolled.   | NA                           |
| <b>*Certificate Validity</b> | Dropdown   | Validity of the certificate to be enrolled. (in days/months/years)  | Certificate validity accepts |

| Field Name   | Field Type | Description | Validation             |
|--|------------|-------------|------------------------|
|  |            |             | only numerical values. |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |             |                        |

If the **Select CA =DigiCert**, then a separate section **Vendor Specific Details** is displayed after the CA Accounts section with two fields described below.

#### Vendor Specific Details for DigiCert CA - Field and Description Table

| Field Name   | Field Type | Description   | Validation   |
|--|------------|---|--|
| <b>*Server Type</b>                                  | Dropdown   | Select a server type.<br><br>The dropdown is populated with the first available value. Select an appropriate value as required.   | NA   |
| <b>*Payment Method</b>                               | Dropdown   | Select a payment method. The possible options are:<br><br>1. <b>Bill To Account Balance</b> - Pay with the account balance. Returns an error if this option is disabled for the account or if the account has an insufficient fund.<br><br>2. <b>Bill To Default Credit Card</b> - Pay with the account's default credit card. Returns an error if no default credit card is configured for the account | Alphanumeric characters, spaces, and the special characters <code>-_.*</code> are allowed. |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |   |  |

When **DigiCert MPKI** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for DigiCert MPKI:

#### Details for DigiCert MPKI CA - Field and Description Table

| Field Name         | Field Type | Description  | Validation |
|--------------------|------------|--|------------|
| <b>*CA Account</b> | Dropdown   | Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations. | NA         |

| Field Name                | Field Type | Description   | Validation |
|---------------------------|------------|---|------------|
| <b>*Profiles</b>          | Dropdown   | Select a profile from the dropdown option.  | NA         |
| <b>*CA Certificate</b>    | Text       | Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed. | NA         |
| <b>*CA Connector Name</b> | Text       | Name of the CA connector after the certificate is enrolled.   | NA         |

**NOTE:** Fields with \* (asterisk) are mandatory.



**Note:** **Email address** is a mandatory field on the enrollment form for DigiCert MPKI, but while passing it in the CSR, it is not added in certificate subject DN. Therefore, to successfully renew DigiCert MPKI certificates using EST Fetch Certificate Parameters in EST Advanced Settings should be set to YES.

The **Custom Attributes** section is displayed on selecting the specific values from the **Profile** dropdown:

#### Custom Attributes for DigiCert MPKI CA - Field and Description Table

| Field Name          | Field Type | Mandatory | Description                                     | Validation |
|---------------------|------------|-----------|---|------------|
| <b>*common_name</b> | Text       | Yes       | This field will be auto-populated from the CSR. | NA         |
| <b>*dnsName</b>     | Text       | Yes       | Enter a valid DNS name.                         | NA         |

**NOTE:** Fields with \* (asterisk) are mandatory.



**Note:** Based on the DigiCert MPKI account configuration **Custom Attributes** section may also be displayed on the endpoint configuration page.

When **Ejbca** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for Ejbca CA:

Details for Ejbca CA - Field and Description Table

| Field Name   | Field Type | Description   | Validation  |
|--|------------|---|---|
| <b>*CA Account</b>                                   | Dropdown   | Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.  | NA  |
| <b>*CA Certificate</b>                               | Dropdown   | Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed. | NA  |
| <b>*CA Connector Name</b>                            | Dropdown   | Name of the CA connector after certificate is being enrolled.   | NA  |
| <b>*Certificate Validity</b>                         | Text       | Validity of the certificate to be enrolled.   | Certificate validity accepts only numerical values. |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |   |   |

If the selected CA is Ejbca, a separate section **Vendor specific details** is displayed after the CA Accounts section. The following table provides the field description for Vendor specific details:

Vendor Specific Details for Ejbca CA - Field and Description Table

| Field Name                      | Field Type | Description                             | Validation   |
|---------------------------------|------------|---|--|
| <b>*End Entity Profile Name</b> | Dropdown   | Select a profile of an end entity.      | NA   |
| <b>End entity user name</b>     | Text       | Enter the user name for the end entity. | Alphanumeric characters, spaces, and the special characters <code>-_.*</code> are allowed. |

| Field Name   | Field Type | Description                           | Validation |
|--|------------|---------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>*Issuer Common Name</b>                           | Dropdown   | Select a common name of an issuer.    | NA         |
| <b>*Certificate Profile Name</b>                     | Dropdown   | Select a profile name of certificate. | NA         |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |                                       |            |

When **Entrust** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for **Entrust CA**:

#### Details for Entrust CA - Field and Description Table

| Field Name                   | Field Type | Description  | Validation  |
|------------------------------|------------|--|---|
| <b>*CA Account</b>           | Dropdown   | Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.   | NA  |
| <b>*Certificate Type</b>     | Dropdown   | Select a valid cert type associated with the CA account. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the <b>Certificate Category</b> radio button is selected to <i>Server</i>, the dropdown is populated with the first available value. Select an appropriate value as required.</li> <li>If the <b>Certificate Category</b> radio button is selected to <i>Client</i>, the dropdown is populated with 'None' as the default value.</li> </ul> | NA  |
| <b>*CA Certificate</b>       | Text       | Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.  | NA  |
| <b>*CA Connector Name</b>    | Text       | Name of the CA connector after the certificate is enrolled.  | NA  |
| <b>*Certificate Validity</b> | Dropdown   | Validity of the certificate to be enrolled. (in days/months/years)   | Certificate validity accepts only numerical values. |

- If the selected CA is **Entrust**, a separate section displaying **Vendor specific details** and **Custom Attributes** is displayed after the **CA Accounts** section.



**Note:** Based on the Entrust ECS account configuration **Custom Attributes section** may also be displayed as shown above.

#### Vendor Specific Details for Entrust CA - Field and Description Table

| Field Name               | Field Type | Description                                 | Validation |
|--------------------------|------------|---|------------|
| <b>Additional Emails</b> | Text       | Enter the valid email address in the field. | NA         |
| <b>Requester Name</b>    | Text       | Enter the requester name                    | NA         |
| <b>Requester Email</b>   | Text       | Enter a valid email id.                     | NA         |
| <b>Requester Phone</b>   | Text       | Enter the 10-digit phone number.            | NA         |

When **Entrust MPKI** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for Entrust MPKI CA:

#### Details for Entrust MPKI CA - Field and Description Table

| Field Name                | Field Type | Description   | Validation |
|---------------------------|------------|---|------------|
| <b>*CA Account</b>        | Dropdown   | Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.  | NA         |
| <b>*CA Certificate</b>    | Dropdown   | Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed. | NA         |
| <b>*CA Connector Name</b> | Text       | Name of the CA connector after  | NA         |

| Field Name   | Field Type | Description                    | Validation |
|--|------------|--------------------------------|------------|
|  |            | certificate is being enrolled. |            |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |                                |            |

When **GlobalSign Atlas** is selected as CA

The following table provides the field description for **GlobalSign Atlas CA**:

**Details for GlobalSign Atlas CA - Field and Description Table**

| Field Name   | Field Type | Description   | Validation  |
|--|------------|---|---|
| <b>*Select CA</b>                                    | Dropdown   | Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.  | NA  |
| <b>API Credential Friendly name</b>                  | Dropdown   | Select a CA Account to communicate with during the certificate enrollment actions.  | NA  |
| <b>Certificate Profile</b>                           | Dropdown   | Select the certificate Profile from the dropdown.   | NA  |
| <b>*CA Certificate</b>                               | Dropdown   | Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed. | NA  |
| <b>*CA Connector Name</b>                            | Select     | Name of the CA connector after the certificate is enrolled.   | NA  |
| <b>*Certificate Validity</b>                         | Dropdown   | Validity of the certificate to be enrolled. (in days/months/years)  | Certificate validity accepts only numerical values. |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |   |   |

A **Generic Fields** section is also displayed below the CA Accounts section. It contains the fields related to the CSR parameters based on the profile (API Credential Friendly name) selected. Only the Organization field is mandatory and is fetched from the selected profile. Rest of the fields are optional.

- When **GlobalSignMSSL** is selected as CA,

The following table provides the field description for GlobalSignMSSL CA:

**Details for GlobalSign MSSL CA - Field and Description Table**

| Field Name   | Field Type | Description   | Validation  |
|--|------------|---|---|
| *CA Account  | Dropdown   | Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.  | NA  |
| *Product Type  | Dropdown   | Select the specific Product Type.<br>The values are fetched from the CA Settings configuration.   | NA  |
| *CA Certificate                                      | Select     | Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed. | NA  |
| *CA Connector Name                                   | Select     | Name of the CA connector after the certificate is enrolled.   | NA  |
| *Certificate Validity                                | Dropdown   | Validity of the certificate to be enrolled. (in days/months/years)  | Certificate validity accepts only numerical values. |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |   |   |

The following field is displayed in the **Vendor Specific Details** section as per the selected CA:

**Vendor Specific Details for GlobalSign MSSL CA - Field Description Table**

| Field Name    | Field Type | Description   | Validation |
|---------------|------------|---|------------|
| *Profile name | Dropdown   | Select the Profile based on the configurations made in the Certificate Authority Setting. | NA         |

The following field is displayed in the **Point of Contact** section as per the selected CA. The CA mandates the point of contact information for traceability. All auto-enrollment requests via this endpoint will be registered with the point of contact information entered here.

**POC Details for GlobalSign MSSL CA - Field and Description Table**

| Field Name            | Field Type | Description                   | Validation |
|-----------------------|------------|-------------------------------|------------|
| <b>*First Name</b>    | Text       | Enter the first name          | NA         |
| <b>*Email Address</b> | Text       | Enter the valid email address | NA         |
| <b>*Phone Number</b>  | Text       | Enter the valid phone number  | NA         |

When **Google** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for Google CA:

**Details for Google CA - Field and Description Table**

| Field Name                  | Field Type | Description   | Validation |
|-----------------------------|------------|---|------------|
| <b>*CA Account</b>          | Dropdown   | Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.  | NA         |
| <b>*Certificate Profile</b> | Dropdown   | Select the certificate profile type.  | NA         |
| <b>*Issuer Location</b>     | Dropdown   | Select an issuer location that is associated with the CA account.   | NA         |
| <b>*Pool Name</b>           | Dropdown   | Select a pool name to issue the certificate.  | NA         |
| <b>*Issuer Name</b>         | Dropdown   | Select an issuer name to issue the certificate.   | NA         |
| <b>*CA Certificate</b>      | Dropdown   | Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed. | NA         |

| Field Name   | Field Type | Description   | Validation  |
|--|------------|---|---|
| <b>*CA Connector Name</b>                            | Text       | Name of the CA connector after certificate is being enrolled. | NA  |
| <b>*Certificate Validity</b>                         | Text       | Validity of the certificate to be enrolled.                   | Certificate validity accepts only numerical values. |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |   |   |

When **HydrantID** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for HydrantID CA:

#### Details for HydrantID CA - Field and Description Table

| Field Name                | Field Type | Description   | Validation |
|---------------------------|------------|---|------------|
| <b>*CA Account</b>        | Dropdown   | Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.  | NA         |
| <b>*HydrantID Policy</b>  | Dropdown   | Select the policy associated with the CA Account to be used for certificate operations.   | NA         |
| <b>*CA Certificate</b>    | Dropdown   | Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed. | NA         |
| <b>*CA Connector Name</b> | Text       | Name of the CA connector after  | NA         |

| Field Name   | Field Type | Description                                 | Validation  |
|--|------------|---|---|
|  |            | certificate is being enrolled.              |   |
| <b>*Certificate Validity</b>                         | Text       | Validity of the certificate to be enrolled. | Certificate validity accepts only numerical values. |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |   |   |

When **Microsoft Enterprise** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for Microsoft Enterprise CA:

#### Details for Microsoft Enterprise CA - Field and Description Table

| Field Name   | Field Type | Description   | Validation  |
|--|------------|---|---|
| <b>*CA Account</b>                                   | Dropdown   | Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.  | NA  |
| <b>*CA Certificate</b>                               | Dropdown   | Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed. | NA  |
| <b>*CA Connector Name</b>                            | Text       | Name of the CA connector after certificate is being enrolled.   | NA  |
| <b>*Certificate Validity</b>                         | Text       | Validity of the certificate to be enrolled.   | Certificate validity accepts only numerical values. |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |   |   |

- If the selected CA is Microsoft Enterprise, a separate section **Vendor specific details** is displayed with a **Template Name** dropdown after the CA Accounts section.

When **Microsoft Standalone** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for Microsoft Standalone CA:

**Details for Microsoft Standalone CA - Field and Description Table**

| Field Name   | Field Type | Description   | Validation |
|--|------------|---|------------|
| *CA Account  | Dropdown   | Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.  | NA         |
| *CA Certificate                                      | Dropdown   | Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed. | NA         |
| *CA Connector Name                                   | Text       | Name of the CA connector after certificate is being enrolled.   | NA         |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |   |            |

When **Nexus** is selected as CA,

The following table provides the field description for **Nexus CA**:

**Details for Nexus CA - Field and Description Table**

| Field Name  | Field Type | Description  | Validation |
|-------------|------------|--|------------|
| *CA Account | Dropdown   | Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations. | NA         |

| Field Name                   | Field Type | Description   | Validation  |
|------------------------------|------------|---|---|
| <b>*CA Certificate</b>       | Select     | Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed. | NA  |
| <b>*CA Connector Name</b>    | Select     | Name of the CA connector after the certificate is enrolled.   | NA  |
| <b>*Certificate Validity</b> | Select     | Validity of the certificate to be enrolled. (in days/months/years)  | Certificate validity accepts only numerical values. |

The following field is displayed in the **Vendor Specific Details** section as per the selected CA:

#### Details for Nexus CA - Field and Description Table

| Field Name        | Field Type | Description   | Validation |
|-------------------|------------|---|------------|
| <b>*Procedure</b> | Dropdown   | Select the Procedure based on the configurations made in the Certificate Authority Setting. | NA         |


6. Configure the **Advanced Settings** details as follows:

The following table provides the field description for Advanced Settings:

#### Advanced Setting - Field and Description Table

| Field Name                           | Field Type   | Description  |
|--------------------------------------|--------------|--|
| <b>*Switch to Enroll</b>             | Radio button | Select Yes or No<br>Selecting the radio button as Yes will convert the re-enrollment requests to enrollment requests |
| <b>*Fetch Certificate Parameters</b> | Radio button | Select Yes or No<br>Setting the radio button to Yes, will enable the system to automatically fetch certificate       |

| Field Name                              | Field Type     | Description  |
|---|----------------|--|
|   |                | parameters from a Suggestive Policy, and append them to the client CSRs.   |
| <b>*Include Truststore Certificates</b> | Radio button   | Select whether the issuer certificate needs to be sent to client machines after enrolment.   |
| <b>*High Speed Transactions</b>         | Radio button   | Based on the selection of this field, the endpoint will be configured with or without High Performance transaction times. Request information pertaining to High-Performance can be viewed on the Direct Requests page.  |
| <b>*Return Existing Certificate</b>     | Radio button   | <p>If this option is enabled (<b>Yes</b>) then for request with AppViewX should check and return the existing valid certificate for the same CSR &amp; public key from inventory if available otherwise it should proceed with enrollment and return the certificate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If it is set to <b>Yes</b>, the Certificate Threshold field is displayed.</li> </ul> <p>If the option is disabled (<b>No</b>) then the AppViewX will do the default behavior of enrolling a new certificate for each request.</p> |
| <b>Certificate Threshold</b>            | Text (numeric) | This field is enabled only if <b>Return Existing Certificate = Yes</b> .   |

| Field Name   | Field Type | Description   |
|--|------------|---|
|  |            | Enter the number of days in this field. This value is used to Initiate a new certificate request if the certificate is nearing the expiry date i.e., if existing certificate validity is less than the entered value. |
| <b>*Retry Count</b>  | Text       | Values accepted between 5 - 99.<br><br>Based on this value, the EST agent will trigger the number of calls to collect the certificate from AppViewX until it is received.   |
| <b>*Retry Frequency</b>  | Text       | Values accepted between 10 - 99.<br><br>The value specified in this field determines the duration taken between the trigger calls by the EST agent.   |
|  <b>Note:</b> Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory. |            |   |

7. Click **Save**.






## Validating EST

Once the EST settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the CA and Agent-related details are properly configured.

1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > System Administration > Auto Enrollment > EST**.
2. On the **EST** page, click **Check** to validate the EST setting that has been created.

The EST settings will be validated and the **Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.

### Connection Status Logs ✕

-  **Enrollment Agent**  
Agent ip is reachable 09/01/2020 07:22:55 AM
-  **Certificate Group**  
Group validation successful 09/01/2020 07:22:55 AM
-  **Certificate Policy**  
Policy validation successful 09/01/2020 07:22:55 AM
-  **Certificate**  
Certificate validation successful 09/01/2020 07:22:55 AM
-  **CA Setting**  
CA setting validation successful 09/01/2020 07:22:55 AM

**Connection valid!**

# Chapter 15: Uninstall and Cleanup

## • Steps to Uninstall/Cleanup KUBE+ Deployment

### Steps to Uninstall/Cleanup KUBE+ Deployment

The in-cluster components of KUBE+ deployed in the Kubernetes cluster must be completely uninstalled, if the administrator wishes to cease certificate lifecycle management for the designated cluster.

To achieve this, execute the following commands to uninstall the KUBE+ in-cluster component Cert-Orchestrator from your cluster.

- Uninstall the Cert-Orchestrator by executing the following Helm command:

```
helm uninstall crypto-mesh -n crypto-mesh.
```

- Uninstall the CSI provider if the Ephemeral Volume Feature gate has been installed by executing the following command:

```
helm uninstall csi -n crypto-mesh
```



**Note:** If the CSI provider is already present in the cluster and was not installed as a part of the cert-orchestrator deployment you can skip the uninstall of the CSI provider step.

- Remove the KUBE+ helm repositories from your cluster by executing the following commands:

```
helm repo remove crypto-mesh  
helm repo remove csi
```



**Note:** You should proceed with the removal of the CSI provider from the repository only if it was enabled during the Cert-Orchestrator installation. If the CSI provider was already available, you can skip this step.

- Even after deleting the components of Cert-Orchestrator, Kubernetes secrets, configmaps, and other associated metadata may still remain in the cluster. You can remove this residual data by deleting the namespace where Cert-Orchestrator is installed.

```
kubectl delete ns crypto-mesh
```



**Note:** If a custom namespace was used during the installation of Cert-Orchestrator, please replace 'crypto-mesh' with your specified custom namespace.

- During the installation of Cert-Orchestrator, it deploys multiple Custom Resource Definitions (CRDs) within the Kubernetes cluster. To remove these CRDs manually, execute the following command:

```
kubectrl get crd | grep appviewx | awk '{print $1}' | xargs kubectrl delete crd
```

The steps outlined above completely remove the KUBE+ in-cluster components from the cluster. If the Cert-Orchestrator has been successfully uninstalled, the following commands will produce an empty output.

The commands are:

- ```
kubectrl get namespace | grep crypto-mesh
```



**Note:** If the namespace name is not 'crypto-mesh,' replace it with your custom namespace.

- ```
kubectrl get crd | grep appviewx
```
- ```
helm repo list
```



**Note:** The command above should exclude both 'crypto-mesh' and the CSI repo.

- ```
kubectrl get pods -n crypto-mesh
```



**Note:** The command above should not display any running pods.

# Chapter 16: FAQ and Troubleshooting

- [Command Line Cheat Sheet](#)
- [FAQ](#)

## Command Line Cheat Sheet

List of kubectl commands for configuring and troubleshooting issues pertaining to KUBE+ in-cluster components.

**Command Line Cheat Sheet Table**

| S. No. | Command  | Purpose   |
|--------|--|---|
| 1      | <code>kubectl get all --all-namespaces</code>                | lists resources (pods, services, deployments, etc.) in all namespaces.  |
| 2      | <code>kubectl get namespace &lt;namespace_name&gt;</code>    | Retrieves information about a specific namespace in a Kubernetes cluster.   |
| 3      | <code>kubectl delete namespace &lt;namespace_name&gt;</code> | Deletes a specific namespace and all the resources contained within it in a Kubernetes cluster.   |
| 4      | <code>kubectl get pod</code>                                 | List all the pods in the current Kubernetes namespace.  |
| 5      | <code>kubectl get pods -n=[namespace_name]</code>            | lists all the pods in a specific namespace in a Kubernetes cluster. Replace "[namespace_name]" with the actual name of the namespace you want to target. This command displays information about the pods in that namespace |
| 6      | <code>kubectl delete pod &lt;pod_name&gt;</code>             | Deletes a specific pod in a Kubernetes cluster.   |
| 7      | <code>kubectl get secrets</code>                             | Lists all the secrets available in the current Kubernetes namespace.  |

**Command Line Cheat Sheet Table (continued)**

| S. No. | Command  | Purpose  |
|--------|--|--|
| 8      | <code>kubectl describe secret &lt;secret_name&gt;</code>             | Displays detailed information about a specific secret in a Kubernetes cluster.   |
| 9      | <code>kubectl delete secret &lt;secret_name&gt;</code>               | Deletes a specific secret in a Kubernetes cluster.   |
| 10     | <code>kubectl apply -f manifest_file.yaml</code>                     | Applies a configuration to an object by filename or stdin.   |
| 11     | <code>kubectl logs -f &lt;pod_name&gt;</code>                        | Prints the logs for a pod and it will continuously stream the logs as new log entries that are generated in real-time. This is useful for monitoring and troubleshooting applications running in Kubernetes pods.. |
| 12     | <code>kubectl logs -c &lt;container_name&gt; &lt;pod_name&gt;</code> | Prints the logs from a specific container within a pod in a Kubernetes cluster.  |
| 13     | <code>kubectl logs &lt;pod_name&gt; pod.log</code>                   | Redirects and saves the logs from a specific pod in a Kubernetes cluster to a file named 'pod.log'.  |

## FAQ

### 1. How to configure HA ?

- You can configure HA by increasing the number of pods running, By default this is set to one.
- "`certOrchestrator.replicaCount`" field needs to be overridden in the deployment.
- Can use `--set` flag to override the same as below using helm
  - `--set certOrchestrator.replicaCount=2` (example to increase the number of pods to two )
- Always only one pod will be a leader, other pods will be non-leader, when the leader is down, an election will happen to elect the leader among the existing non-leader + new pod ( created due to the kill of old leader ), based on the election one of the pod will become Leader.

2. How to check if your pod is up and running ?How to configure monitoring for your pod running in a cluster?

You can monitor the pod livenessProbe under the below path from the cert-orchestrator pod

path: /healthz

port: 8081

3. How to add tolerations to the deployment pod?

Tolerations can be overridden using helm, PI refer the helm chart configuration.

4. What is the permission to be allowed in the cluster for running your pod?

- cert-orchestrator
  - configmaps
- create, get
  - namespaces
    - get, list
- nodes
  - get, list, watch
- pods
  - get, list
- secrets
  - create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:casettingclusters
  - create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:casettingclusters/status
  - get, patch, update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:casettings
  - create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:casettings/status
  - get, patch, update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:certreqs
  - create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch

- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:certreqs/status
  - get, patch, update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:certs
  - create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:certs/finalizers
  - update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:certs/status
  - get, patch, update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:discoveryrequests
  - create, delete, get, list, patch, update watch
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:discoveryrequests/finalizers
  - update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:discoveryrequests/status
  - get, patch, update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:renewaljobs
  - create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:renewaljobs/status
  - get, patch, update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:signers
  - create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:signers/finalizers
  - update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:signers/status
  - get, patch, update
- certificates.k8s.io:certificatesigningrequests
  - get, list, patch, update, watch
- certificates.k8s.io:certificatesigningrequests/status
  - get, patch, update
- certificates.k8s.io:[SIGNER\_NAME]/istio:signers

- sign
- coordination.k8s.io:leases
  - create, delete, get, list, update, watch
- events
  - create, patch
- networking.k8s.io:ingresses
  - get, list, watch
- secrets-store.csi.x-k8s.io:secretproviderclasses
  - create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch
- secrets-store.csi.x-k8s.io:secretproviderclasses/finalizers
  - update
- secrets-store.csi.x-k8s.io:secretproviderclasses/status
  - get, patch, update
- appviewx-infra-orchestrator
  - cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:discoveryrequests
    - create, get
- appviewx-csi-provider
  - serviceaccounts/token
    - create
  - secrets
    - create, get
  - cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:certs
    - create, get

5. What is the permission given for SA (cluster role and cluster role binding)?

Refer to the answer provided for the previous question.

6. How to configure resource requirements?

Refer to the helm chart configuration under `certOrchestrator.resources`.

**cert-orchestrator : Helm chart configuration parameters**

| Qualifier                  | Parameter                 | Definition  | Allowed Values  |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|---|---|
| certOrchestrator           | enabled                   | Enable certOrchestrator.  | true / false  |
|                            | renewalEnabled            | Enable renewal.   | true / false  |
|                            | namespace                 | Namespace for the cert-orchestrator installation.               | Valid namespace name                                    |
| certOrchestrator.discovery | enabled                   | Enable Discovery  | true / false  |
|                            | isGroupAutoGenerate       | Allow auto group creation at AppViewX.                          | true / false  |
|                            | credentialSecretName      | Secret with credentials to be used for Discovery with AppViewX. | Valid Secret Name                                       |
|                            | credentialSecretNamespace | Namespace for the above.  | Valid namespace Name                                    |
| certOrchestrator.global    | logLevel                  | Log level for the cert-orchestrator terminal log.               | 0 to 7  |
|                            | clusterName               | Name of the cluster for the current installation.               | Valid Cluster Name                                      |
|                            | k8sVendor                 | Type of vendor where the cert-orchestrator runs.                | Valid vendor Name                                       |
| certOrchestrator.image     | repository                | Repository name for the image                                   | Valid image name with repo                              |
|                            | tag                       | tag for the image   | Valid image tag   |
|                            | pullPolicy                | Image Pull Policy   | Always, Never or IfNotPresent. Defaults to IfNotPresent |

| Qualifier                  | Parameter       | Definition  | Allowed Values   |
|----------------------------|-----------------|---|--|
| certOrchestrator.resources | limits.cpu      | Describes the maximum amount of CPU allowed.                | Default is 1000m, See Kubernetes - <a href="#">meaning of CPU</a>    |
|                            | limits.memory   | Describes the maximum amount of Memory allowed.             | Default is 1Gi. see Kubernetes - <a href="#">meaning of Memory</a>   |
| certOrchestrator.resources | requests.cpu    | Describes the minimum amount of CPU required.               | Default is 500m, see Kubernetes - <a href="#">meaning of CPU</a>     |
|                            | requests.memory | Describes the minimum amount of Memory required.            | Default is 500Mi. See Kubernetes - <a href="#">meaning of Memory</a> |
| certOrchestrator           | tolerations     | Describes the tolerations allowed for the pods to schedule. |  |

#### appviewx-csi-provider : Helm chart configuration parameters

| Qualifier                 | Parameter   | Definition  | Allowed Values  |
|---------------------------|-------------|---|---|
| appviewxCsiProvider       | enabled     | Enable <code>appviewxCsiProvider</code> .                   | true / false  |
| appviewxCsiProvider.image | repository  | Repository name for the image.                              | Valid image name with repo.                             |
|                           | tag         | Tag for the image.  | Valid image tag   |
|                           | pullPolicy  | Image Pull Policy   | Always, Never or IfNotPresent. Defaults to IfNotPresent |
| certOrchestrator          | tolerations | Describes the tolerations allowed for the pods to schedule. |   |

**appviewx-signer : Helm chart configuration parameters**

| Qualifier      | Parameter | Definition             | Allowed Values |
|----------------|-----------|------------------------|----------------|
| appviewxSigner | enabled   | Enable appviewxSigner. | true / false   |

**appviewx-infra-orchestrator : Helm chart configuration parameters**

| Qualifier                 | Parameter   | Definition  | Allowed Values  |
|---------------------------|-------------|---|---|
| appviewxInfraOrchestrator | enabled     | Enable certOrchestrator.                                    | true / false  |
|                           | tick        | Sync frequency for the certificate scan.                    | Valid time period string. Example : "60m"               |
| appviewxInfraOrchestrator | repository  | Repository name for the image.                              | Valid image name with repo                              |
|                           | tag         | Tag for the image.  | Valid image tag   |
|                           | pullPolicy  | Image Pull Policy   | Always, Never or IfNotPresent. Defaults to IfNotPresent |
| appviewxInfraOrchestrator | tolerations | Describes the tolerations allowed for the pods to schedule. |   |